# Movement, growth and stock assessment of the coastal fish Lichia amia (Teleostei: Carangidae) off the South African coast. 

by

## Daniel Smith

Submitted in fulfilment of the academic requirements for the degree of Master of Science in the School of Life \& Environmental Sciences, University of KwaZulu-Natal, Durban


#### Abstract

The limited range of garrick/leervis Lichia amia, its popularity as a gamefish to all sectors of the marine recreational linefishery and the degradation of many estuaries which function as nurseries for this species, has aroused concern about the stock status of this species. In addition, other than a preliminary investigation conducted by ORI in 1992, relatively little research has been undertaken on this important recreational species. Considering the recreational value of $L$. amia and the need to provide a scientific basis for its management, a comprehensive stock assessment was required. This study therefore investigated the biology and stock status of L. amia off the South African coast. Through ad hoc biological sampling undertaken from 1978-2007 and validation of growth by means of OTC marking, the growth of the L. amia population was best described as: $L_{t}=$ $1206 \mathrm{mmFL}\left(1-e^{-0.20[t+1.10 \text { years }]}\right)$. Growth was also determined using tag-recapture and length frequency data. The tag-recapture data was further utilized in illustrating the movement behaviour of $L$. amia. Trends in catches were determined from the analysis of catch and effort data from the National Marine Linefish System (NMLS) and Boat Launch Site Monitoring System (BLSMS) databases. This showed a decreasing trend in the CPUE of L. amia along the KZN coast over time for all sectors of the KZN marine recreational linefishery investigated. The growth parameter estimates from the length-at-age data were used in undertaking a per-recruit assessment of $L$. amia. The results of the spawner-biomass-per-recruit (SBPR) model indicate that L. amia is at $14 \%$ of its unfished level. According to the South Africa's Linefish Management Protocol (LMP), the L. amia stock has thus collapsed and appropriate management options to rebuild the stock are discussed.


## PREFACE

The work described in this dissertation was carried out at the Oceanographic Research Institute of the School of Life and Environmental Sciences, University of KwaZulu-Natal, Durban from March 2007 to December 2008, under the supervision of Professor Rudy P. van der Elst and Mr Bruce Q. Mann.

These studies represent original work by the author and have not otherwise been submitted in any form for any degree or diploma to any tertiary institution. Where use has been made of the work of others, it is duly acknowledged.

## DECLARATION 1 - PLAGIARISM

I, $\qquad$ declare that

1. The research reported in this dissertation, except where otherwise indicated, is my original research.
2. This dissertation has not been submitted for any degree or examination at any other university.
3. This dissertation does not contain other persons' data, graphs or other information, unless specifically acknowledged as being sourced from other persons.
4. This dissertation does not contain other persons' writing, unless specifically acknowledged as being sourced from other researchers. Where other written sources have been quoted, then:
a. Their words have been re-written but the general information attributed to them has been referenced,
b. Where their exact words have been used, then their writing has been placed in italics and inside quotation marks, and referenced.
5. This dissertation does not contain text, graphics or tables copied and pasted from the Internet, unless specifically acknowledged, and the source being detailed in the dissertation and in the Reference sections.

Signed. $\qquad$

## DECLARATION 2 - PUBLICATIONS

Research presented in this dissertation has not yet contributed to any publications (in preparation, submitted, in press or published) other than an oral presentation at the South African Marine Science Symposium (SAMSS), University of Cape Town (UCT), Cape Town 29 June-3 July 2008:

SMITH, D., MANN, B.Q., FENNESSY, S.T. and VAN DER ELST, R.P. 2008. Biology and stock assessment of the coastal fish Lichia amia (Teleostei: Carangidae) off the South African coast. South African Marine Science Symposium, UCT, Cape Town 29 June-3 July 2008.

Signed. $\qquad$

## LIST OF CONTENTS

TITLE PAGE ..... i
ABSTRACT ..... ii
PREFACE ..... iii
DECLARATION 1 - PLAGIARISM ..... iv
DECLARATION 2 - PUBLICATIONS ..... v
LIST OF CONTENTS ..... vi
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS ..... ix
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS ..... x
CHAPTER 1: Introduction ..... 1
1.1 Review of the biology of Lichia amia (Linnaeus, 1758) ..... 1
Identifying features ..... 1
Distribution of Lichia amia ..... 2
Habitat ..... 3
Migration ..... 5
Feeding ..... 5
Reproduction and maturity ..... 8
Age and growth ..... 8
Stock assessment ..... 9
1.2 A description of the Lichia amia fishery in South Africa ..... 10
1.3 Aims and objectives of this study ..... 11
CHAPTER 2: Assessment of the Lichia amia fishery in KwaZulu-Natal ..... 13
2.1 Introduction ..... 13
2.2 Materials and methods ..... 16
Data sources and study area ..... 16
Shore patrols ..... 18
Boat inspections ..... 18
Catch cards ..... 18
Boat Launch Site Monitoring System (BLSMS) ..... 19
Catch per unit effort and catch composition ..... 19
Shore fishery ..... 19
Skiboat fishery ..... 20
Spearfishery ..... 20
2.3 Results ..... 21
Catch composition ..... 21
Shore fishery ..... 22
Skiboat fishery ..... 33
Boat inspections ..... 33
Boat Launch Site Monitoring System (BLSMS) ..... 36
Spearfishery ..... 37
2.4 Discussion ..... 40
CHAPTER 3: Tag and Recapture Assessment ..... 44
3.1 Introduction ..... 44
3.2 Materials and methods ..... 45
Tagging ..... 45
Movement behaviour ..... 47
Spatial and temporal movement ..... 47
Movement model ..... 48
3.3 Results ..... 53
Tagging ..... 53
Movement behaviour ..... 59
Spatial and temporal movement ..... 59
Movement model ..... 66
3.4 Discussion ..... 72
CHAPTER 4: Age and Growth ..... 80
4.1 Introduction ..... 80
4.2 Materials and methods ..... 81
General sampling ..... 81
Processing and reading otoliths ..... 82
Validation ..... 83
Indirect method ..... 83
Direct method ..... 83
Growth model ..... 84
Tag-recapture data. ..... 85
Length frequency analysis ..... 89
4.3 Results ..... 90
Otolith ageing ..... 93
Validation ..... 96
Indirect method ..... 96
Direct method. ..... 97
Growth model ..... 99
Tag-recapture data. ..... 102
Length frequency analysis ..... 107
4.4 Discussion ..... 108
CHAPTER 5: Per-recruit Assessment ..... 113
5.1 Introduction ..... 113
5.2 Materials and methods ..... 115
Mortality ..... 115
Per-recruit assessment ..... 118
5.3 Results ..... 120
Mortality ..... 120
Per-recruit assessment ..... 122
5.4 Discussion ..... 125
CHAPTER 6: Conclusion and Management Considerations ..... 132
REFERENCES ..... 141
APPENDICES ..... 161

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Thank you to my supervisors Mr Bruce Mann and Prof. R. P. van der Elst for all the help, encouragement and patience. Many thanks to Dr Sean Fennessy, Dr Paul de Bruyn and Dr Anesh Govender for their input. To the NRF and SAAMBR for the financial support. Finally to my wife and family for all the support and encouragement, and to God for life itself.

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

## Organisations:

| EKZNW | Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife (previously known as the KwaZulu-Natal <br> Wildlife, KwaZulu-Natal Nature Conservation Services and Natal Parks Board) |
| :--- | :--- |
| MCM | Marine and Coastal Management (previously known as Sea Fisheries) |
| ORI | Oceanographic Research Institute |
| SAIAB | South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity |
| SAMLMA | South African Marine Linefish Management Association |

## Monitoring systems:

NMLS National Marine Linefish System
BLSMS Boat Launch Site Monitoring System

## Regions along the South African coast:

| Province | Region | Code | Locality code |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| KZN | Maputaland | MP | $3565-3727$ |
|  | Zululand | ZL | $3732-3909$ |
|  | Greater Durban | GD | $3910-4005$ |
|  | South Coast | SC | $4006-4125$ |
| Eastern | Transkei | Trans. | $4126-4400$ |
|  | Border | Bor. | $4403-4546$ |
|  | Lower Eastern Cape | LEC | $4550-4974$ |
| Western | Southern Cape | SCp | $4976-5268$ |
| Cape | Lower Western Cape | LWC $^{1}$ | $5272-5653$ |

[^0]
## Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Zones:

| BN | Bhanga Nek | BT | Ballito |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| SD | Sodwana Bay | DB | Durban Area |
| CV | Cape Vidal | KB | Kingsburgh |
| SL | St. Lucia | SB | Scottburgh |
| MP | Mapelane | UT | Umtentweni |
| RB | Richards Bay | UV | Uvongo |
| MT | Mtunzini | TF | Trafalgar |
| TG | Tugela | BT | Ballito |

## General:

| LMP | Linefish Management Protocol | CPUE | Catch per unit effort |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| FL | Fork length $(\mathrm{mm})$ | APE | Average percent error |
| TL | Total length $(\mathrm{mm})$ | CV | Coefficient of variance |
| ML | Maxilla length (mm) | D | Index of precision |
| SL | Standard length (mm) | MZA | Marginal zone analysis |
| Wt | Weight (kg or g) | SE | Standard Error |
| Eq. | Equation | Obs. | Observed |
| Rel. | Released | Exp. | Expected |
| Rec. | Recaptured | Dev. | Deviance |
| Insp. | Inspected | $Y P R$ | Yield-per-recruit |
| Hrs. | Hours | $S B P R$ | Spawner-biomass-per-recruit |
| Dist. | Distance | $M S Y$ | Maximum sustainable yield |
| Ref. | Reference | BOFFF | Big Old Fat Fecund Female Fish |
| Freq. | Frequency | TLPMF | Traffic Light Precautionary Management Framework |
| km | Kilometres | TLS | Traffic Light System |

## CHAPTER 1

## Introduction

### 1.1 Review of the biology of Lichia amia (Linnaeus, 1758)

The Carangidae is a diverse family of teleost fishes comprising 151 species in 30 genera. Lichia amia belongs to a monospecific genus in the Carangidae family. In the past, there was some confusion about the correct name of this genus. The originally accepted generic name Hypacanthus Rafinesque, 1810, was suppressed, as it appeared to be an incorrect spelling of Hypanacantus Rafinesque, 1809. Consequently, Cuvier's Lichia (1817) was given nomenclatural precedence (Melville, 1979), while the specific name amia was derived from Linnaeus' original description of this species as Scomber amia in 1758. In South Africa L. amia are commonly known as the leervis or garrick. Elsewhere in the world, common names for L. amia are liche, especially in French speaking regions, and akya in the Mediterranean. Other common members of the Carangidae family include species from the genera Caranx (kingfish), Scomberoides (queenfish), Seriola (yellowtail) and Trachinotus (pompano).

## Identifying features

L. amia have a distinct shape and cannot be easily confused with any other fish species, i.e. a slightly concave belly and a distinctive lateral line that is irregular and sinuous, curving over the top of the pectoral fin and then dipping below it without side branches (Smith-Vaniz and Staiger, 1973; Smith and Heemstra, 1986). Adult L. amia are silver-grey dorsally and silvery-white below the lateral line, with dark fins and a large deeply forked tail. In contrast, juveniles less than 100 mm in length are characterised by a conspicuous orange-yellow colour with six to seven vertical black bands (Smith, 1949; Smith and Heemstra, 1986). L. amia appear to be scaleless having a leathery skin, from which the Afrikaans name "Leervis" was derived. However, minute narrow, oval-shaped embedded scales are present, which are needle-like on the breast (Smith-Vaniz and Staiger, 1973). The dorsal and anal fins consist of two sections; the dorsal fin has seven short isolated spines, while the anal fin has two separate spines (van der Elst, 1988). These spines on the dorsal and anal fins are arranged before a large soft spine, behind which nineteen or twenty rays extend toward the tail (van der Elst, 1988). The dorsal and anal fin lobes are longer than the pectoral fins. L. amia has a
large mouth that extends back past the eyes, with a protruding lower jaw, which carries villiform teeth and seven to nine gill rakers on the first gill arch (Smith-Vaniz and Staiger, 1973). Unlike other species in the family Carangidae, it has no development of the lateral line scales into scutes (Smith-Vaniz and Staiger, 1973).

## Distribution of Lichia amia

L. amia has a limited geographic distribution, being confined to parts of the Mediterranean, eastern Atlantic and south-western Indian Ocean, as seen in Figure 1.1 (van der Elst et al., 1993). This species is found in the Mediterranean and Black Sea, down the coast of north-west Africa (in particular Mauritania) and along parts of the west coast of Africa to northern Namibia. It is scarce south of Cunene mouth to Table Bay, but increases in abundance from False Bay (near Cape Point) through to northern KwaZulu-Natal (KZN), as illustrated in Figure 1.1 (Biden, 1948; Day, 1967; Day et al., 1981; Schoeman, 1978; Smith and Heemstra, 1986). According to van der Elst et al. (1993), most of the L. amia stock along the South African coast is found between Cape Point and Cape Vidal.


Figure 1.1: Distribution of Lichia amia globally and along the South African coast.

With the limited distribution of the $L$. amia stock off the South African coast and the lack of $L$. amia on the west coast of Southern Africa between Cunene mouth and Table Bay, it is possible that separate stocks will be present. Genetic analyses will be needed to determine if these are in fact separate stocks.

## Habitat

The mechanism driving the southward dispersal of the early life stages of a number of South Africa's linefish species was originally thought to be the Agulhas Current (van der Elst, 1976; Heydorn et al., 1978; Joubert, 1981; van der Elst, 1988; Smale, 1984; Garratt, 1988; van der Elst and Adkin, 1991). However, Beckley (1993) has shown this to be strictly speaking incorrect in a study on the ichthyoplankton found along South Africa's east coast. Beckley (1993) established that oceanographic features and wind forcing associated with the shoreward edge of the Agulhas Current, are the main contributors in the southward dispersal of fish eggs and larvae. Beckley's (1993) study thus indicated that fish larvae are distributed southwards in shelf waters inshore of the Agulhas Current rather than in the Agulhas Current as originally theorised. It is believed that $L$. amia eggs and larvae are distributed southwards by this mechanism.

A recent study by Connell (2007), on the marine fish eggs and larvae from the east coast of South Africa, supports the findings of Beckley (1993). During Connell's (2007) study, L. amia eggs were recorded, although rarely, off Park Rynie ( 60 km south of Durban) from September to November. These eggs were only found in samples taken 5 km offshore and not in the Agulhas Current - with its core on average 40-60 km off Durban (Schumann, 1988). The infrequency with which the eggs were recorded, indicated that L. amia probably do not spawn in close proximity to Park Rynie. With all the $L$. amia eggs collected in offshore samples, Connell (2007) concluded that they were probably transported by a combination of wind and current from an area further north. Based on the time the eggs take to hatch ( $\sim 48$ hours) the spawning grounds for L. amia are thought to be off the Tugela region of the KZN north coast (about 120 km north of Durban) (Connell, 2007). As adult $L$. amia are not known to move far offshore and generally remain within 500 m of the coast (van der Elst et al., 1993), it is possible that the eggs are first retained within the Natal gyre before being distributed southwards inshore of the Agulhas Current (A. Connell, pers. comm.)

Recruitment of small juveniles between $40-120 \mathrm{~mm}$ TL into estuaries of the Cape occurs mainly during late spring and summer, i.e. November to March (Day et al., 1981; Ratte, 1982; Beckley, 1983; Beckley, 1984; Hanekom and Baird, 1984; Bennett, 1989a; Whitfield, 1990; Whitfield and Kok, 1992; Quinn et al., 1999). These estuaries act as nurseries for juveniles and sub-adults that benefit from reduced predation and higher food availability (Smale and Kok, 1983; Bennett, 1989a; Bennett, 1989b; Whitfield, 1990). Recruitment into estuaries during spring and summer may assist in the survival of the juvenile L. amia. According to Cyrus and Blaber (1987) and Bennett (1989a), summer rains increase river flow and aid predator avoidance by increasing turbidity. In addition, Whitfield (1990) noted higher availability of food during summer in comparison to winter, and during summer prolific aquatic vegetation can act as important refuges and habitats (Blaber and Cyrus, 1983; Whitfield, 1984).

Juvenile L. amia living in estuaries can tolerate a wide range of salinities (i.e. euryhaline). Blaber and Cyrus (1983) recorded L. amia at salinities of between 2 and $38 \%$. According to Day et al. (1981), L. amia are often found in the upper reaches of estuaries. Additionally, in a study by Blaber and Cyrus (1983), L. amia were shown to have an apparent preference for turbid waters with none recorded at turbidities lower than 7.5 NTU but were present at turbidities as high as 76.0 NTU . Many estuaries in South Africa are under threat from increased development in catchment areas, reduced freshwater inflow and increased use of estuarine resources (Lamberth and Turpie, 2003). With a heavy reliance on estuaries as nursery areas in the Cape, this has resulted in the reduction and degradation of habitat availability for juvenile L. amia and has thus affected the survival of fish in estuaries (Whitfield, 1997).

Although juvenile L. amia have been considered dependent on estuaries as nursery areas (Wallace et al., 1984), Lasiak (1981) established that surf-zone waters might also function as important nursery areas for this species off King's Beach, Port Elizabeth. Similarly, Bennett (1989b) recorded juvenile L. amia in a moderately exposed surf-zone in the South-western Cape. Although abundance of juvenile $L$. amia in this surf-zone habitat is low compared to juveniles of other species, Bennett (1989b) concluded that $L$. amia also make use of surf-zones as nurseries.

Wallace and van der Elst (1975) showed that juvenile L. amia are rare in KZN estuaries, with cooler, more temperate estuaries and surf-zones in the Eastern and Western Cape acting as the main nursery areas for L. amia (Smale and Kok, 1983). Similarly, Blaber and Cyrus (1983) confirmed
that although juvenile $L$. amia do occur in all types of KZN estuaries, in comparison to other juveniles and sub-adults of other Carangid species, L. amia were fairly rare.

After initial juvenile recruitment and a residence period of approximately 1-3 years, sub-adult $L$. amia ( $\sim 500 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL) leave their nursery areas and join the migrating adult population (Bennett, 1989a; Whitfield, 1990). As an inshore fish species, sub-adult and mature adult L. amia are found mainly in the surf-zone, typically within 500 m of the coast (van der Elst et al., 1993) and with a preferred depth range of 1-20 m (B. Mann, ORI, pers. comm.). Commonly, these L. amia will form small shoals along the backline where they are swift and aggressive predators.

## Migration

Like a number of other South African linefish species, L. amia are seasonally migratory. In winter L. amia migrate up to KZN from the Cape, arriving around June, often in association with the annual sardine run (Sardinops sagax) and shoals of elf/shad (Pomatomus saltatrix). After spawning in spring to early summer, adults migrate back southwards to the cooler Cape waters (Day et al., 1981; van der Elst, 1988; Branch et al., 2002). According to Smale (1983), this migration is either asynchronous, or part of the population remains behind in the Cape, as adult L. amia are caught in Cape waters throughout the year.

The general pattern of movement up the South African coast based on catches (i.e. when L. amia are in season) is described by Biden (1948) and Schoeman (1978) as: between False Bay and Hermanus from January to April, Mossel Bay from November to April, between Knysna and Plettenberg Bay from March to May, Port Elizabeth from October to April, East London from March to October, and KZN from late May through to early November.

## Feeding

Once recruited into an estuary, juvenile L. amia feed aggressively on a variety of prey species (Day et al., 1981), and are even able to consume prey fish longer than their own stomach length (Marais, 1984). In order to feed efficiently and avoid larger predators in estuaries, juveniles will seek cover under structure such as vegetation or floating debris, and from this concealed position lunge out and
feed on passing fish (Day et al., 1981; Smale and Kok, 1983). This was illustrated by Smale and Kok (1983) who recorded juveniles close to aquatic macrophyte beds in the shallows of the Knysna and Swartvlei estuaries. As juvenile L. amia start losing their conspicuous yellow and black colouration at a length greater than 100 mm , their feeding behaviour changes. Juveniles $>100 \mathrm{~mm}$ become a silvery colour and they are often found in close association with schools of mullet of similar size, allowing for an undetected approach towards smaller prey fish which they strike at as soon as they are within range (Smale and Kok, 1983).

Coetzee (1982) stated that L. amia is the most important predatory fish in the Swartvlei estuarine system. The importance of $L$. amia within the Knysna estuary was also shown by Day (1967) when studying the trophic relations within the system. In his study, Day (1967) showed that L. amia was the top-predator in the food web within the system, as illustrated in Figure 1.2.


Figure 1.2: Trophic relations between the main biotic and abiotic elements within the Knysna Estuary (Adapted from Day, 1967, p 406).

Previous work on the diet of L. amia included analyses undertaken in various Cape (Coetzee, 1982; Smale and Kok, 1983; Marais, 1984; Bennett, 1989c) and KZN estuaries (Whitfield and Blaber, 1978; Blaber and Cyrus, 1983). From these studies, it was shown that the diet of L. amia varied greatly with a wide number of different prey species selected due to a number of factors. (See

Appendix I for a detailed summary of the selected prey species in the diet of $L$. amia as found in the above-mentioned studies).

In the studies conducted in various Cape estuaries, the stomach content analyses of L. amia revealed changes in prey species selected both spatially within an estuary and according to the size of the predator. Spatial variability in the diet of L. amia, within different estuarine systems, was attributed to the relative abundance and accessibility of prey species with L. amia generally feeding on whatever prey was available (Ratte and Hanekom, 1980; Coetzee, 1982; Smale and Kok, 1983; Marais, 1984). Although this was the case, differences in the diets of juvenile, sub-adult and adult L. amia were found with juveniles showing a greater dependence on estuarine associated crustaceans (e.g. Palaemon pacificus and Penaeus spp.) and molluscs than sub-adult and adult $L$. amia (Coetzee, 1982; Smale and Kok, 1983; Marais, 1984; Bennett, 1989c). All sub-adult and adult L. amia were more or less exclusively piscivorous feeding on a number of different fish species, with Gobiidae and Mugilidae species being common as well as Hepsetia breviceps and Gilchristella aestuarius.

Within KZN estuaries (Mdloti, Mlalazi, Mtamvuna, and St Lucia estuaries), Blaber and Cyrus (1983) found L. amia to be exclusively piscivorous with the exception of a very low frequency of penaeid prawns within their diet. Similarly, Whitfield and Blaber (1978) found L. amia to be exclusively piscivorous (mainly Mugilidae and Rhabdosargus sarba) within the St Lucia system. However, Blaber and Cyrus (1983) found L. amia to prefer comparatively slower moving species (Oreochromis mossambicus and Thryssa vitrirostris). As with the studies done on the diet of $L$. amia in Cape estuaries, Whitfield and Blaber (1978) attributed prey selection to both prey abundance and accessibility.

Once $L$. amia leave their nursery areas and move to the sea, feeding activities and diet change. Adult L. amia hunt in shoals in open water and are known to herd fish in the surf-zone, they may even trap baitfish in a gully before feeding on them (van der Elst, 1988). As in estuaries, fish dominate the diet of $L$. amia in inshore waters with prey species selected being mainly pelagic or shoaling demersal species (Lasiak, 1982; Smale, 1983; van der Elst, 1988; Heemstra and Heemstra, 2004). According to van der Elst (1988) and Heemstra and Heemstra (2004) P. saltatrix, Sarpa salpa and Pomadasys olivaceum are preferred prey species. Lasiak (1982) recorded L. amia to have fed on P. saltatrix, Trachurus capensis and S. sagax. In addition, according to Smale (1983), L.
amia prey selection differed according to their size. Smaller L. amia (401-700 mm FL) were found to have fed mainly on small shoaling pelagic teleosts such as Trachurus trachurus, Engraulis capensis and Scomber japonicus. Larger L. amia (701-1200 mm FL), fed predominantly on larger shoaling pelagic prey (i.e. adult S. sagax and S. japonicus).

## Reproduction and maturity

A number of authors have suggested a different length at maturity for L. amia. Day et al. (1981) and Smith and Heemstra (1986) estimated the length at maturity of L. amia to be 550 mm FL. In contrast, van der Elst (1988) stated that maturity is reached at 600 mm FL. In addition, from work done on a fish community in an Eastern Cape surf-zone, Lasiak (1982) noted the presence of ripe male L. amia from between 750 and 843 mm TL and proposed that spawning occurred during October. Van der Elst et al. (1993) subsequently determined that $50 \%$ maturity is attained at 750 mm FL in males and at 850 mm FL in females ( $\sim 4$ years). In this study, van der Elst et al. (1993) showed that $L$. amia has a single spawning season that occurs from September through to November during which ripe fish are caught at an approximate sex ratio of $1: 1$. In a recent study Potts et al. (2008) showed that L. amia, off the southern Angolan coast, reached $50 \%$ maturity at a size of 623 mm FL ( 2.43 years), had an extended spawning season (June to November) and observed possible spawning aggregations during September and for a shorter period in August. During this time, L. amia were caught at a sex ratio of 1 male to 1.9 females that were on average larger than male fish (Potts et al., 2008).

## Age and growth

In a study on the population structure and growth of Rhabdosargus holubi in the West Kleinemonde estuary from 1971-1973, Blaber (1974) calculated the growth of L. amia for comparative purposes. With the mouth of the estuary closed during this time, it was possible to calculate the growth rate of L. amia from length frequency data. The study showed that in the period from January to July 1971 the increase in the modal size of $L$. amia was from 90-200 mm SL ( $\sim 18 \mathrm{~mm} . \mathrm{month}^{-1}$ ) (Blaber, 1974). Smale and Kok (1983), looking at the monthly length frequency distribution of L. amia in the Knysna estuary, calculated a slightly faster growth rate of L. amia i.e. from November to June, the modal progression was determined to be between $50-350 \mathrm{~mm}\left(\sim 29 \mathrm{~mm} . \mathrm{month}^{-1}\right)$.

Van der Elst et al. (1993) were first to age L. amia from South African waters and accomplished this by means of counting growth rings in whole sagittal otoliths. In this study L. amia was found to undergo rapid growth and $L_{\infty}$ was calculated as 940 mm FL , although the largest specimen sampled was 1130 mm FL. Potts et al. (2008), off the southern Angolan coast, also showed L. amia to undergo rapid growth ( $K=0.22$ year $^{-1}$ ) and calculated $L_{\infty}$ as 1135 mm FL. The largest $L$. amia sampled by Potts et al. (2008) was 1190 mm FL ( $26,2 \mathrm{~kg}$ ), with a maximum age of 11 years, whereas the maximum age recorded by van der Elst et al. (1993) was 9 years.

Day et al. (1981) suggested L. amia reached a maximum weight of 25 kg at a length of 1700 mm . Questionably, Boubacar et al. (1999) and Heemstra and Heemstra (2004) suggested that L. amia could obtain a much larger length and weight (i.e. 2000 mm and 50 kg ). However, with the South African angling record for $L$. amia currently at $32,2 \mathrm{~kg}(\sim 1500 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL) and the spearfishing record at $31,2 \mathrm{~kg}$ (van der Elst, 1988), the maximum length is more likely to be $\sim 1800 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL (Smith and Heemstra, 1986).

## Stock assessment

The only previous attempt to assess the stock status of L. amia in South African waters was carried out by van der Elst et al. (1993). CPUE data, from rock and surf angling tournaments held in KZN between 1957 and 1991, showed considerable fluctuations, but no obvious trends could be identified. A total mortality $(Z)$ of 0.55 year $^{-1}$ was determined using the slope of the descending limb of the catch curve. Fishing mortality $(F)$ was calculated at 0.17 year ${ }^{-1}$ using tag-recapture data from the ORI/WWF-SA Tagging Project and a natural mortality $(M)$ of 0.37 year ${ }^{-1}$ was calculated using Pauly's (1980) empirical equation. Using these mortality estimates yield-per-recruit ( $Y P R$ ) analysis was undertaken with $F_{0.1}$ estimated at 0.7 year $^{-1}$ and when compared to an unfished situation the $F_{\text {SB50 }}$ (the reduction of spawning biomass by $50 \%$ ) was at a fishing mortality of $F=0.66$ year $^{-1}$. As the $F$ value for the period 1957-1991 was far less than the calculated $F_{0.1}$ and $F_{\text {SB50 }}$ values, it was concluded that L. amia was not over-exploited. The rapid growth rate and relatively early attainment of sexual maturity was seen as advantageous in maintaining fishing pressure placed on L. amia. In addition, the comparatively low annual catch was perceived as another contributor to the lack of concern on the status of $L$. amia.

### 1.2 A description of the Lichia amia fishery in South Africa

Linefishing is defined as the use of hooks and line, excluding set longlines, to catch fish (van der Elst and Adkin, 1991). The South African linefishery is made up of commercial, recreational and subsistence components. This multi-user fishery is large and exploits over 200 fish species of which approximately 95 species are economically important (Griffiths et al., 1999). With no commercial exploitation of L. amia permitted throughout South Africa, L. amia is primarily targeted by the recreational linefishery.

As an open access fishery, South Africa's recreational fishery is large with an estimated 500000 participants in 1996 (Brouwer et al., 1997; Mann et al., 1997; McGrath et al., 1997; Sauer et al., 1997; Mann, 2000; Mann et al., 2003). This component of the South African linefishery comprises four distinct sectors, i.e. shore-angling, skiboat fishing (marine), light-tackle boat fishing (predominantly estuarine) and spear-fishing. Furthermore, the above sectors comprise two definitive elements: formal organised competition angling and non-competitive social angling (van der Elst, 1989; Pradervand and Govender, 1999). Van der Elst and Adkin (1991), and Mann (2000) highlight the importance of the marine recreational fishery in meeting the recreational needs of many South Africans. McGrath et al. (1997) demonstrated that sport and recreation is a major reason for both recreational shore and skiboat fishing trips along the whole of the South African coast throughout all income brackets. According to van der Elst (1989) 15\% of coastal residents fish in the sea regularly, while there is at least one angler in every four urban households. In a more recent evaluation of recreational fishing in South Africa, Leibold and van Zyl (2008) estimated the economic impact of the marine recreational fishery (the measure of change within the economy due to marine recreational fishery including purchases, supplies, materials, jobs, fuel etc) to be $\sim \mathrm{R} 9.3$ billion per annum.

As a popular gamefish L. amia is heavily targeted by all sectors of South Africa's recreational linefishery (van der Elst et al., 1993). Management of L. amia is enforced through a combination of regulations including decommercialization (no sale), a daily bag limit and a minimum size limit. Table 1.1 illustrates the history of management measures implemented for L. amia in South African waters. All lengths are TL measured in a straight line from the tip of the snout to the extreme end of the tail.

Table 1.1: Regulations for Lichia amia in South Africa.

| Year | Regulations | Act |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1973 | Min. size (380 mm) <br> Bag limit (5) | Sea Fishery Act No. 58 of 1973 |
| 1974 | Min. size (700 mm) <br> Bag limit (5) | Natal Conservation Ordinance (Ordinance No. 15 of 1974) <br> - KZN only |
| 1988 | Min. size (700 mm) <br> Bag limit (5) <br> No sale | Sea Fishery Act No. 12 of 1988 |
| 1998 | Min. size (700 mm) <br> Bag limit (5) <br> No sale | Marine Living Resources Act No. 18 of 1998 |
| 2005 | Min. size (700 mm) <br> Bag limit (2) <br> No sale | Marine Living Resources Act No. 18 of 1998 |

### 1.3 Aims and Objectives of this study

Despite numerous amendments to the Sea Fishery Act and the implementation of a comprehensive suite of national management regulations designed to limit catch and effort in 1985, and the subsequent revision of these in 1992, many South African linefish species have been over-exploited (Griffiths, 2000). There has been a significant change in the species composition of catches and a gradual decline in CPUE along the coast of South Africa (van der Elst and Adkin, 1988; van der Elst and de Freitas, 1988; van der Elst, 1989; Bennett, 1991; Griffiths, 1997a; Attwood and Farquhar, 1999; Penney et al., 1999; Griffiths, 2000). Consequently, in response to the failure of previous management frameworks to generate realistic regulations and to fulfil the requirements of the Marine Living Resources Act (No. 18 of 1998), a new management protocol, the Linefish Management Protocol (LMP), was drafted in 1999 (Griffiths et al., 1999). The LMP lays out regulations for South Africa's linefishery based on objectives and quantifiable reference points, and is designed to execute management plans for each important fish species through a predetermined cycle of monitoring, assessment and revision of management regulations (Griffiths et al., 1999). Other than a recent study on L. amia off the southern Angolan coast (Potts et al., 2008) and a preliminary investigation conducted by the ORI in 1992 into the age, growth and stock status of $L$. amia (van der Elst et al., 1993), relatively little research has been undertaken on this species in

South African waters. Therefore, due to its popularity as a gamefish to all sectors of the recreational fishery, reviewing the status of the $L$. amia stock and revising current management regulations according to the LMP is essential to ensure its future sustainable use.

Furthermore, the limited geographic range of $L$. amia and the degradation of many estuaries that function as important nurseries for this species, have aroused concern about the stock status of the South African population. Considering the value of L. amia, both in terms of its ecological function as an apex predator as well as its socio-economic importance to the recreational fishery, and the need to provide a scientific basis for its management, a comprehensive stock assessment is required to determine its current status. The focus of this study is therefore to review the biology and stock status of $L$. amia off the South African coast.

The specific aims and objectives of this study are:

1. To review the biology of $L . a m i a$ as found in literature.
2. To assess the trends in catch per unit effort (CPUE) and catch composition of L. amia in the KZN marine recreational linefishery.
3. To determine the movement behaviour of $L$. amia through the analysis of tag-recapture data.
4. To determine the age and growth of $L$. amia both through the analysis of tag-recapture data and by assessment of growth rings in whole otoliths.
5. To assess the stock status of L. amia using tag-recapture models, per-recruit models and CPUE data to determine biological reference points and stock status indicators.
6. To model various management options in order to provide a scientific basis for the management of this species that will ensure future sustainable use.

## CHAPTER 2

## Assessment of the Lichia amia fishery in KwaZulu-Natal

### 2.1 Introduction

South Africa's marine recreational linefishery is a large, licence-controlled fishery, comprising a number of distinct sectors (i.e. shore angling, marine skiboat fishing, estuarine lighttackle boat fishing and spearfishing) and, with a wide range of different target species, it can be considered a multi-user, multi-species fishery. Shore angling by means of hook and line is a popular form of marine resource use in South Africa (Pradervand and Baird, 2002) and is considered one of the most popular methods of marine angling around the world (Hickley and Thompkins, 1998). Shore angling is accessible to all sectors of South Africa's society and is of great importance to thousands of people (McGrath et al., 1997; Singh, 2004). During the National Marine Linefish Survey (1994-1996) the management and participation of each sector of South Africa's linefishery was evaluated (Brouwer et al., 1997; Lamberth et al., 1997; Mann et al., 1997; McGrath et al., 1997; Sauer et al., 1997). McGrath et al. (1997) determined approximately 412000 anglers take part in the shore fishery and accounted for an annual catch of about 4.5 million fish weighing approximately 3000 tons (Brouwer et al., 1997). Recreational marine boat angling in South Africa takes place from a range of different vessel types from small, single-seater paddle-craft and jet-skis to large harbour-based charter vessels $>10 \mathrm{~m}$ in length. The most popular vessel type used in South Africa is the skiboat described by Penney et al. (1999). Boat anglers can target different types of fish depending on the tackle and method used. So-called "bottom-fish" and pelagic gamefish are the two most important groups of fish targeted. The South African marine recreational boat-based fishery has an estimated 3500 boats and 12800 anglers participating in the fishery (Sauer et al., 1997). In comparison to the above-mentioned fisheries, spearfishing involves using a diving mask, snorkel, fins and a rubber propelled spear to shoot selected fish species (Mann et al., 1997) and can take place from the shore (swimming out) or from a boat. This is the smallest sector of the South African linefishery comprising about 7000 participants with a total annual catch of approximately 400 tons (Mann et al., 1997).

Monitoring catches of linefish in South Africa's marine recreational linefishery has been made possible through the establishment of the National Marine Linefish System (NMLS) in 1984. The

NMLS is a long-term catch and effort database that permits the efficient capture, storage and analysis of catch and effort data from South Africa's commercial and recreational linefishery (Penney, 1993; van der Elst and Penney, 1994; Pradervand and Govender, 1999). The database was created between 1983-1985 and was developed out of the need to combine and compare recreational data on database systems developed in KZN by the Oceanographic Research Institute (ORI), and data from commercial linefisheries on systems developed by Sea Fisheries (now Marine and Coastal Management - MCM) (Penney, 1993). Since the inception of the NMLS, staff at the ORI, MCM, and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife (EKZNW, formally known as the Natal Parks Board), have been involved in the collection and analysis of long-term catch and effort data from different sectors of the recreational linefishery in KZN (Pradervand and Govender, 1999).

The flexibility of the NMLS in capturing catch and effort data is a key function as it caters for all sectors of the recreational linefishery and has room for the addition of newly developed data types (Penney, 1993). Data from each facet of each sector of the recreational linefishery, i.e. the competitive (organised competitive angling) and non-competitive (social angling) elements for shore angling, skiboat fishing and spearfishing are incorporated through different data collection methods and entered into separate databases (van der Elst and Adkin, 1988; Pradervand and Govender, 1999). Being flexible, catch and effort data can be captured on the NMLS as long as a date, locality, fish species, an index of catch (weight or number) and effort (e.g. angler hours) is available (van der Elst and Penney, 1994). The majority of recreational catch and effort data captured onto the NMLS come from KZN.

Although the NMLS is a valuable source of long-term catch and effort data, there are a number of biases associated with these data including sample and non-sample biases (Mann-Lang, 1996). Sample biases include temporal bias, spatial bias, mis-identification of fish species, incorrect weights, exaggeration and under-reporting of catches in voluntary and observer-based data. For example, Pradervand (2007) highlighted the spatial and temporal bias caused by inconsistent patrol distances and hours on patrol. With 75\% of EKZNW shore patrols performed between 6 am and 12 pm, the majority of anglers and fish caught in the afternoon and evenings have been excluded from shore patrols (Pradervand, 2007). Non-sample biases include targeting of certain fish species by anglers, especially during fishing competitions, resulting in a low catch rate of other species rather than an actual low quantity of fish (Mann-Lang, 1996).

Lichia amia is heavily targeted by all sectors of South Africa's marine recreational linefishery (van der Elst et al., 1993). As it has been categorised as a "recreational species" it is illegal for commercial anglers to catch and sell $L$. amia. The popularity of $L$. amia as a game fish to all sectors of the recreational fishery and a perceived decline in abundance has contributed to the concern over the status of L. amia in South African waters (van der Elst et al., 1993). The NMLS is the only province-wide, long-term data series available for assessing catch and effort trends in KZN's marine recreational fishery (Pradervand, 2007). A number of studies have focused on using NMLS data to assess trends in various components of the KZN marine recreational linefishery (Penney et al., 1999; Singh, 2004; Pradervand et al., 2007a; Pradervand, 2007). However, with the large scope of most of these studies, little mention has been given to the specific trends in catch and effort of $L$. amia. This chapter assesses the trends in catch composition and catch per unit effort (CPUE) of $L$. amia over a 22 -year period (1985-2006) in the KZN marine recreational linefishery on a zonal, regional and provincial basis utilising data extracted from the NMLS. In addition to the NMLS, a relatively new monitoring system was implemented in KZN during 2004 to monitor boat-launching effort (Pradervand et al., 2005). Known as the Boat Launch Site Monitoring System (BLSMS), these data were also integrated to provide a further source of information on trends in catches of $L$. amia in KZN.

### 2.2 Materials and methods

## Data sources and study area

Catch and effort data are collected by EKZNW in fifteen zones along the KZN coast (Table 2.1 and Figure 2.1). The collection methods for the various sectors of the KZN marine recreational linefishery include EKZNW shore patrols, fishing competition results submitted by angling clubs, voluntary catch cards and EKZNW skiboat inspections (Penney, 1993; Govender, 1995a). The main sources of data that were used in this study included shore patrols, skiboat inspections and spearfishing catch cards.

Table 2.1: Description of Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife shore patrol zones.

| Region | Zone | Code | Location | Length (km) |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Maputaland | Bhanga Nek <br> Sodwana Bay <br> Cape Vidal | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \mathrm{BN} \\ & \mathrm{SD} \\ & \mathrm{CV} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | (3 565) Maputo/R.S.A. Border - (3 620) Hulley Point $(3624)$ Dewitt's Bay - (3 665) Red Cliffs (N.Natal) $(3$ 666) Ochre Hill - (3 727) Mission Rocks | $\begin{aligned} & 55 \\ & 41 \\ & 61 \end{aligned}$ | 157 |
| Zululand | St. Lucia <br> Mapelane <br> Richards Bay <br> Mtunzini <br> Tugela | $\begin{gathered} \text { SL } \\ \text { MP } \\ \text { RB } \\ \text { MT } \\ \text { TG } \end{gathered}$ | (3 732) 3732 Km - ( 3741 ) St Lucia estuary mouth <br> (3 742) St Lucia South Bank - (3 755) Cape St Lucia <br> (3 763) Barge Reef - (3 824) Mainhulyami Hill <br> (3 829) Umlalazi River - (3 857) Amatikulu River Mouth <br> (3 858) Matigulu Bluff - (3 909) Umhlali River | $\begin{gathered} \hline 9 \\ 13 \\ 61 \\ 28 \\ 51 \end{gathered}$ | 162 |
| Greater <br> Durban | Ballito <br> Durban Area <br> Kingsburgh | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { BT } \\ & \text { DB } \\ & \text { KB } \end{aligned}$ | (3 910) Christmas Bay - (3 934) Umhloti River (3 935) Umdloti Water Tower - (3 978) Isipingo (3 979) Tiger Rocks - (4 005) Ilfracombe | $\begin{aligned} & 24 \\ & 43 \\ & 26 \end{aligned}$ | 93 |
| South Coast | Scottburgh <br> Umtentweni <br> Uvongo <br> Trafalgar | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { SB } \\ & \text { UT } \\ & \text { UV } \\ & \text { TF } \end{aligned}$ | (4 006) Umkomaas Pipeline - (4 041) 4041 Km <br> (4 042) Mtwalume River - (4 077) Umzimkulu River <br> (4 078) Port Shepstone - (4 098) Ramsgate <br> (4 099) Mbizana - (4 125) Transkei Border | 35 35 20 26 | 116 |



Figure 2.1: Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife shore patrol zones along the KwaZulu-Natal coast.

## Shore patrols

The main source of data for the marine recreational shore fishery were derived from the EKZNW shore patrols, who are mandated to undertake them as part of their fisheries monitoring obligations under the Marine Living Resources Act (No. 18 of 1998) (Pradervand, 2007). These patrols, which take place in the fifteen zones illustrated in Figure 2.1, provide a method for monitoring both competitive and non-competitive shore angling in KZN. Conducted mainly during daylight hours and on foot (van der Walt, 1995), these patrols are a form of roving creel survey in combination with law enforcement (e.g. ensuring adherence to fishery regulations). Data collected includes date, location, patrol distance (km), patrol hours, number and species of fish caught, number of anglers counted for the distance patrolled and distinction between marine or estuarine patrols.

## Boat inspections

The collection of recreational boat angling data, through boat inspections, commenced in 1986 and has gradually replaced voluntarily submitted catch card data (Pradervand, ORI, pers. comm.). These inspections occur in the form of access point surveys and are conducted intermittently at all boat launch sites along the KZN coast. Data collected includes date, locality, time fished, number of crew, number of fish caught and estimated weights of each fish.

## Catch cards

Catch cards are voluntarily submitted or collected at controlled access points. Information on the location and time fished, as well as the number and species of fish caught, is recorded on each card by the angler. As observed data (collected by a trained conservation officer) is generally considered better than voluntarily submitted catch card data (Mann-Lang, 1996), catch cards have been gradually phased out. Today only the estuarine boat fishery and the spearfishery are still monitored using catch cards in KZN.

## Boat Launch Site Monitoring System (BLSMS)

The BLSMS is a relatively new monitoring system that was implemented in KZN in 2004. It is based on the completion of a boat launch register placed at all licensed boat launch sites along the KZN coast. Skippers must complete part of the register before going to sea (for safety reasons). On return, skippers must sign in and complete the register that includes a catch return of all fish caught for recreational anglers. These data form a complete data set as theoretically every outing and associated data are recorded. A drawback of the data is that it has only been recorded from 2004 onwards. There is also a relatively high level of non-compliance by skippers not completing the catch return data. For more information on the Boat Launch Site Monitoring System, see Celliers et al. (2004) and Pradervand et al. (2005, 2006, 2007b and 2007c).

## Catch per unit effort (CPUE) and catch composition

Catch per unit effort (CPUE) refers to the number or weight of fish caught per unit of time fished (effort). CPUE is often used as an index of the abundance of a fish stock (Ricker, 1975; Hoggarth et al., 2006) but must be standardised to avoid bias. For the purposes of this study, CPUE was calculated as the number of fish caught per angler hour fished. However, in the case of the shore patrol data, where angler hours were not available for the entire data set due to computational constraints in the NMLS database (Pradervand, 2007), CPUE was expressed as the number of $L$. amia caught per angler inspected.

In order to illustrate the degree to which L. amia contributes to the total catch of the KZN marine recreational fishery over time, catches by number of L. amia were expressed on an annual basis as the percentage of the total catch composition for each sector of the fishery.

## Shore fishery

Data derived from the EKZNW shore patrols from 1985-2006 (22 year period), were extracted from the NMLS and included information on location (zone locations given as a code, Table 2.1), date (month and year), number per species of fish caught, number of anglers inspected, number of patrols undertaken and total hours and distance ( km ) patrolled. Data were extracted on a zonal basis
over the given time period. Seasonal and annual trends in patrolling effort (the total number of patrols conducted, total hours and distance patrolled) and number of anglers inspected are presented on a zonal, regional and provincial basis for the given time period. $C P U E$ is presented as the number of fish caught per angler inspected (fish/angler insp.). The seasonal and annual trends in CPUE were expressed on a zonal, regional and provincial basis. As data were extracted on a zonal basis, and in order to reflect a regional and provincial scale (zones and regions illustrated in Table 2.1 and Figure 2.1), the data from each zone were summarised into the respective regions and for KZN as a whole.

## Skiboat fishery

For the skiboat sector of the KZN marine recreational fishery, data derived from the boat inspections, as well as data from the BLSMS, were used to determine trends in catch and effort. The data extracted from the skiboat inspections (1985-2006) included the date, location (zone code), number of anglers, number of outings, number per species of fish caught and angler hours. These data were extracted from the NMLS on a provincial basis, because there was insufficient data to allow examination of trends on a zonal and/or regional basis. Inspection effort was expressed in terms of number of boat outings inspected and $C P U E$ as the number of fish caught per angler hour (fish/angler/hr). Data from the BLSMS were extracted on a per launch site basis for the four year period (2004-2007) in which the BLSMS has been undertaken. This included data on location (launch site), date, number of crew (anglers), type and purpose for outing, and type and number of fish species retained. Effort was expressed as the total number of fishing outings recorded and CPUE as number of fish caught per angler hour (fish/angler/hr). Associated monthly trends (20042007) were presented on a provincial scale, with only those outings included that were recreational fishing outings and that had launch times, return times and number of crew recorded.

## Spearfishery

Data derived from shore patrols, skiboat inspections and voluntary catch cards were used to determine catch and effort trends in the spearfishery during the given time period (1985-2006). The data extracted from the NMLS from the different sources were combined and included information on the date, location (zone code), number of spearfishers, number of outings, number per species of
fish shot, and total hours fished. As for the skiboat fishery, data were extracted from the NMLS on a provincial basis due to the lack of sufficient data to illustrate trends on a zonal and/or regional basis. $C P U E$ was expressed as the total number of fish caught per angler per hour (fish/angler/hr).

There are two summary systems available for the analysis of data on the NMLS, namely, a feedback summary system for participating anglers and a scientific system providing detailed analyses of catch, effort and CPUE data (Penney and van der Elst, 1988). For the purpose of this study, all data were extracted using the scientific system on an area-specific and per outing basis during the period 1985-2006 (22 years). Furthermore, for each fishery all temporal trends in CPUE were assessed by fitting linear least squares regressions to the overall annual $C P U E$. Measures of variability were not shown on associated graphs as this obscured observed trends in the data.

### 2.3 Results

## Catch composition

In KZN from 1985-2006 a total catch of 2.8 million fish were recorded from all forms of data (Table 2.2). Of these only 10422 were L. amia ( $0.37 \%$ ). The percent contribution of $L$. amia to the total catch of the spearfishery is much higher than that contributed to the total catch of the recreational shore fishery and skiboat fishery (Table 2.2). When considering data from the BLSMS, which has only been captured for the past four years, only 664 L. amia were recorded caught by boat anglers out of a total recorded catch of 326793 fish ( $0.20 \%$ contribution). Considering that, the BLSMS includes both skiboat anglers and spear fishers diving off a boat, this catch composition is similar to that observed in the NMLS data.

Table 2.2: Catch composition of Lichia amia for all sectors of the KwaZulu-Natal marine recreational linefishery from 1985-2006.

| Data source | No. L. amia | Total catch | \% composition |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Shore fishery | 8498 | 2390745 | 0.36 |
| Skiboat NMLS | 484 | 414492 | 0.12 |
| Spearfishery | 1440 | 47422 | 3.04 |
| KZN | $\mathbf{1 0 ~ 4 2 2}$ | $\mathbf{2 8 5 2 6 5 9}$ | $\mathbf{0 . 3 7}$ |

The percent contribution of $L$. amia to the overall total catch on an annual basis was presented for the shore fishery, skiboat fishery and spearfishery of KZN (Figure 2.2). The contribution of L. amia to all fisheries was highly variable between years. However, an overall decrease in the contribution of L. amia to all fisheries occurred from 1985-2006. Using linear least squares linear regression, the decreasing trend was only significant ( $p<0.05$ ) for the spearfishery ( $p=0.0006$ ). Inter-fishery variations in the percent contribution occurred, although there was a close correlation between the contributions of L. amia to the total catch of each fishery during 1989 and 1997.


Year
——Shore --- Skiboat ........... Spear

Figure 2.2: Percent contribution of Lichia amia to the total catch in all sectors of the KwaZuluNatal marine recreational linefishery (1985-2006).

## Shore fishery

The EKZNW shore patrol data extracted from the NMLS for the KZN shore fishery is illustrated in Table 2.3. On a provincial scale, during the given time period (1985-2006), just over 2.5 million anglers were inspected in KZN. Data were collected during 130000 shore patrols that covered a total distance of just under 1 million km and took in excess of a quarter of a million hours.

The inter-regional distribution of patrols, in terms of the number of patrols conducted, as well as the hours spent on patrol, was not uniform ranging from <1-20\% of the total sample (Table 2.3). The distance patrolled was, however, slightly more uniform. Coupled with this, the annual trends in the
number of patrols undertaken, hours patrolled and number of anglers inspected, varied greatly within each region and between regions (Figure 2.3). The inter-annual variations in the number of patrols undertaken were, however, slightly less inconsistent in each region and between regions (Figure 2.3).

On a provincial level (KZN), there was a significant increase in the total patrolling effort and the number of anglers inspected over the given time period (Figure 2.4). Inter-annual variations in the number of anglers inspected and distance patrolled were extremely high during the first few years of undertaking shore patrols (1985-1993), after which they became slightly more consistent. Patrol hours and number of patrols were fairly uniform over the 22-year period.

Table 2.3: Total shore patrol effort and number of shore anglers inspected along the KwaZuluNatal coast from 1985-2006.

| Region | Zone | No. <br> Patrols | \% | Patrol <br> Dist. (km) | \% | Patrol <br> Hrs. | \% | No. <br> Anglers Insp. | \% |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Maputaland | BN | 2883 | 2.23 | 49365 | 6.06 | 2688 | 0.74 | 12253 | 0.48 |
|  | SD | 4850 | 3.74 | 36624 | 4.50 | 10037 | 2.76 | 21347 | 0.83 |
|  | CV | 13095 | 10.11 | 59974 | 7.37 | 59391 | 16.31 | 219964 | 8.59 |
| Zululand | SL | 7260 | 5.60 | 31664 | 3.89 | 17877 | 4.91 | 275978 | 10.78 |
|  | MP | 5298 | 4.09 | 20037 | 2.46 | 12880 | 3.54 | 71834 | 2.80 |
|  | RB | 5118 | 3.95 | 58057 | 7.13 | 5801 | 1.59 | 61655 | 2.41 |
|  | MT | 2503 | 1.93 | 15579 | 1.91 | 4111 | 1.13 | 15961 | 0.62 |
|  | TG | 9025 | 6.97 | 68488 | 8.41 | 22093 | 6.07 | 146239 | 5.71 |
| Greater | BT | 10124 | 7.82 | 93954 | 11.54 | 41457 | 11.39 | 270353 | 10.56 |
|  | DB | 25890 | 19.99 | 91200 | 11.20 | 50996 | 14.01 | 514599 | 20.09 |
|  | KB | 7434 | 5.74 | 63031 | 7.74 | 25108 | 6.90 | 302507 | 11.81 |
| South Coast | SB | 8944 | 6.90 | 63811 | 7.84 | 31660 | 8.70 | 147887 | 5.77 |
|  | UT | 9242 | 7.13 | 68568 | 8.42 | 25673 | 7.05 | 181179 | 7.07 |
|  | UV | 7646 | 5.90 | 38886 | 4.78 | 21250 | 5.84 | 170181 | 6.64 |
|  | TF | 10221 | 7.89 | 54959 | 6.75 | 33042 | 9.08 | 149283 | 5.83 |
| KwaZulu-Natal |  | $\mathbf{1 2 9 5 3 5}$ |  | $\mathbf{8 1 4 ~ 1 9 8}$ |  | $\mathbf{3 6 4 ~ 0 6 4}$ |  | $\mathbf{2 5 6 1 2 2 0}$ |  |



Distance patrolled (km)


Number of shore patrols


Hours Patrolled


Figure 2.3: Annual trends in patrolling effort and number of anglers inspected per region of KwaZulu-Natal (1985-2006).


Figure 2.4: Annual trends in patrolling effort and number of anglers inspected along the KwaZuluNatal coast (1985-2006).

The number of EKZNW shore patrols, the distance patrolled and the number of patrol hours undertaken each month was fairly constant in each region (except in the South Coast region which peaked in March and July) (Figure 2.5). Over the 22-year period (1985-2006), the average number of anglers inspected was higher during the winter months (July-August). All regions also showed a slight increase in December coinciding with annual holidays.

The number of patrols and total hours patrolled varied slightly on a monthly basis (Figure 2.6). As on a regional basis, the average number of anglers inspected was higher for KZN as a whole during the winter months (June-August) (Figure 2.6). During this time, the number of anglers inspected peaked in August (518 140 anglers). Lesser peaks in the number of anglers inspected occurred in January (93 168), April (150 224) and December (238 256), months that traditionally coincide with school holidays. Total distance patrolled was more variable, peaking mainly in December (80 042 $\mathrm{km})$.


Figure 2.5: Monthly trends in patrolling effort and number of anglers inspected per region of KwaZulu-Natal (1985-2006).


Figure 2.6: Monthly trends in patrolling effort and number of anglers inspected along the KwaZulu-Natal coast (1985-2006).

A total of 8498 L. amia were caught by the anglers inspected (Table 2.4). The majority of these fish were caught in the Greater Durban region (47\%), while the remaining three regions, Zululand, South Coast and Maputaland, contributed to a lesser degree to the total number of L. amia caught (25, 24 and $3 \%$ correspondingly) (Table 2.4). There was a large difference in the number of L. amia caught between zones, ranging from <1-24\% of the total number of $L$. amia caught.

Table 2.4: Number of Lichia amia caught, on a regional and zonal scale, in the KwaZulu-Natal shore fishery (1985-2006).

| Region | Zone | No. L. amia | \% |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Maputaland | BN | 1 | 0.01 |
|  | SD | 17 | 0.20 |
|  | CV | 274 | 3.22 |
|  | SL | 360 | 4.24 |
|  | MP | 44 | 0.52 |
|  | RB | 103 | 1.21 |
|  | MT | 155 | 1.82 |
|  | TG | 1480 | 17.42 |
| Greater | BT | 825 | 9.71 |
|  | DB | 1141 | 13.43 |
|  | KB | 2042 | 24.03 |
|  | SB | 276 | 3.25 |
| South | UT | 1113 | 13.10 |
| Coast | UV | 355 | 4.18 |
|  | TF | 312 | 3.67 |
| KwaZulu-Natal |  |  |  |

For KZN as a whole, the overall CPUE was calculated as 0.0033 (fish/angler insp.) (Table 2.5). On a regional basis, a higher CPUE was recorded in the middle reaches of the KZN coast, i.e. in the Zululand and Greater Durban region (Table 2.5). CPUE decreased slightly on the lower KZN coast (South Coast) and to a much greater degree on the northern KZN coast in the Maputaland region (Table 2.5). As with the number of $L$. amia caught and number of anglers inspected per zone, there was a high variability between the CPUE recorded for each zone.

Table 2.5: Zonal, regional and provincial CPUE (fish/angler insp.) for Lichia amia (1985-2006).

| Region | Zone | CPUE <br> (fish/angler insp.) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Maputaland | BN | 0.0001 |
|  | SD | 0.0008 |
|  | CV | 0.0013 |
|  | SL | 0.0013 |
|  | MP | 0.0006 |
|  | RB | 0.0017 |
|  | MT | 0.0097 |
|  | TG | 0.0101 |
| Greater Durban | BT | 0.0031 |
|  | DB | 0.0022 |
|  | KB | 0.0068 |
|  | SB | 0.0019 |
| South Coast | UT | 0.0061 |
|  | UV | 0.0021 |
|  | TF | 0.0021 |
| KwaZulu-Natal |  | $\mathbf{0 . 0 0 3 3}$ |

As shown in Figure 2.7, the CPUE of L. amia has decreased in all regions in KZN, with the total number of L. amia caught also displaying a similar trend. The decreasing trend in the CPUE was, however, only significant ( $p<0.05$ ) in the Greater Durban ( $p=0.004$ ) and Maputaland regions ( $p=$ 0.005 ). For KZN as a whole, a significant ( $p<0.05$ ) decrease in the CPUE $(p=0.002)$ was recorded (Figure 2.7). Inter-annual variations along the KZN coast were also present and the highest CPUE was recorded in 1985 ( 0.01 fish/angler insp.) (Figure 2.7).


Figure 2.7: Annual trends in the CPUE (fish/angler inspected) and total number of Lichia amia caught per region and for the entire KwaZulu-Natal coast (1985-2006).

Seasonal trends in catches were evident with the number of L. amia caught increasing from April (autumn) for the South Coast, Greater Durban and Zululand regions, and in May further north along the KZN coast, i.e. in the Maputaland region (Figure 2.8). Catches in all regions peaked during the middle of winter (i.e. July/August). The number of L. amia caught then dropped off during the summer months (December-March). However, the Greater Durban and South Coast regions of KZN had bimodal peaks in abundance with higher numbers of $L$. amia caught during mid-winter and then again during the spring months (September-November).

For KZN as a whole, most L. amia were caught between May and November, and very few during summer months (December-March) (Figure 2.8). Although highest catches were recorded in JuneAugust, CPUE is highest during September and October (Figure 2.8). There was a bimodal peak in CPUE in the South Coast region. This may reflect the migratory behaviour of L. amia with fish arriving in KZN in June and then returning to the Cape during spring once spawning is complete.


Figure 2.8: Monthly trends in the CPUE (fish/angler inspected) and total number of Lichia amia caught per region and for the entire KwaZulu-Natal coast (1985-2006).

## Skiboat fishery

## Boat inspections

A total of 56719 boat inspections, incorporating 1152866 angler hours, were recorded from 19852006. Annual trends in the total number of boats inspected and angler hours fished from 1985-2006 are shown in Figure 2.9. There has been a significant increase in the number of boat inspections conducted and angler hours fished (which is linked to number of boats inspected) from 1985-2006.


Figure 2.9: Annual trends in number of boat inspections conducted and angler hours fished at launch sites along the KwaZulu-Natal coast (1985-2006).

The majority of boat inspections were conducted during the warmer summer months (DecemberMay), with the exception of a peak in July (Figure 2.10). The number of inspections was lowest from August-November, which is synonymous with the windy months of the year.


Figure 2.10: Monthly trends in number of boat inspections conducted and angler hours fished at launch sites along the KwaZulu-Natal coast (1985-2006).

In terms of catches of $L$. amia, the overall $C P U E$ for the skiboat fishery was 0.0004 fish/angler/hr. Annual trends (1985-2006) in CPUE (fish/angler/hr) and the total number of L. amia caught based on skiboat inspections are illustrated in Figure 2.11. Although the total number of L. amia caught increased from 1985-2006, this was primarily due to the higher number of boat inspections conducted. The CPUE over the same period decreased (Figure 2.11), although this trend was not significant $(p>0.05, p=0.316)$. Both the $C P U E$ and number of $L$. amia caught had high inter-annual fluctuations. Peaks in the number of L. amia recorded caught in 1989, 1991 and 1997 correlate with peaks in the number of $L$. amia caught in the shore fishery during the same years (Figure 2.7).

The seasonal trends in total number of L. amia caught and CPUE for the skiboat fishery are illustrated in Figure 2.12. The number of L. amia caught showed a similar trend to the CPUE. Both show increases from June onwards and decrease in November-December. Unlike the shore fishery where catches of L. amia peaked in July-August (Figure 2.8), the number of L. amia caught on skiboats peaked in October. $C P U E$ was highest in October, similar to the shore fishery that peaked in September/October (Figure 2.8).


Figure 2.11: Annual trends in the $C P U E$ (fish/angler/hr) and total number of Lichia amia caught in the skiboat fishery of KwaZulu-Natal (1985-2006).


Figure 2.12: Monthly trends in the CPUE (fish/angler/hr) and total number of Lichia amia caught in the skiboat fishery of KwaZulu-Natal (1985-2006).

## Boat Launch Site Monitoring System (BLSMS)

After filtering the available data, a total of 88968 boat outings that indicated they were undertaking recreational fishing were recorded on the BLSMS from 2004-2007. The seasonal trends in the number of boat outings and angler hours from the BLSMS (Figure 2.13) were similar to the trends recorded from the NMLS boat inspections (Figure 2.10). The highest numbers of outings were recorded in summer (December-May) with the exception of July and the lowest numbers from August-November (Figure 2.13).


Figure 2.13: Monthly trends in number of boat outings and angler hours recorded on the BLSMS at launch sites along the KwaZulu-Natal coast (2004-2007).

The total CPUE using data extracted from the BLSMS was calculated as 0.0005 fish $/$ angler $/ \mathrm{hr}$. Seasonal trends in the number of L. amia caught and CPUE (fish/angler/hr) for the data extracted from the BLSMS (Figure 2.14) were similar to the NMLS skiboat inspection data (Figure 2.12), i.e. the total number of $L$. amia caught and CPUE increased from May and peaked in October.


Figure 2.14: Monthly trends in the CPUE (fish/angler/hr) and total number of Lichia amia recorded caught on the BLSMS at launch sites along the KwaZulu-Natal (2004-2007).

## Spearfishery

The total number of spearfisher outings recorded on the NMLS decreased from a peak in 1992/93 (Figure 2.15). Conversely, the number of angler hours recorded fluctuated between 1985 and 2006 with peaks in 1990, 1992, 1999 and 2004 (Figure 2.15). Seasonal trends in number of outings and angler hours were similar to the skiboat fishery with high effort recorded between December-May, with a peak in July and low effort from August-November (Figure 2.16).


Figure 2.15: Annual trends in the number of outings inspected and angler hours for the spearfishery off KwaZulu-Natal (1985-2006).


Figure 2.16: Monthly trends in the number of outings inspected and angler hours for the spearfishery off KwaZulu-Natal (1985-2006).

The CPUE (fish/angler/hr) and the total number of L. amia shot in the spearfishery showed a similar decreasing trend in KZN from 1985-2006 (Figure 2.17). The CPUE decreased significantly ( $p<0.05, p=0.0007$ ), similar to the shore (Figure 2.7) and skiboat fisheries (Figure 2.11). There was
also an indication of a cyclical peak in the CPUE for L. amia in the spearfishery approximately every 3-4 years. Overall CPUE was calculated as 0.012 fish/angler/hour.


Figure 2.17: Annual trends in the CPUE (fish/angler/hr) and total number of Lichia amia shot in the KwaZulu-Natal spearfishery (1985-2006).

Seasonal trends in CPUE were very similar to the total number of L. amia shot (Figure 2.18). Similar to the other fishery sectors, the highest CPUE and total number of $L$. amia occurred in the winter and spring months (June-November), and was lowest during December-March. Total number of L. amia shot peaked in July similar to the shore fishery (Figure 2.8). Interestingly, CPUE was highest in July and remained more constant throughout the winter months into spring (JuneNovember) than it did in the other two fishery sectors.


Figure 2.18: Monthly trends in the $C P U E$ (fish/angler/hr) and total number of Lichia amia shot in the KwaZulu-Natal spearfishery (1985-2006).

### 2.4 Discussion

CPUE is often used as an index of the abundance of a fish stock (Ricker, 1975; Hoggarth et al., 2006). However, raw CPUE may not be proportional to the abundance over the entire exploitation history and geographic range of a species with many factors effecting catch rates, i.e. improved fishing techniques, species targeting, environmental factors and species population dynamics (Maunder et al., 2006). Thus, it is important that $C P U E$ should be standardised to enable determination of trends over time. Standardised $C P U E$ serves as an index of the state of a fishery, and is often considered one of the most important indicators for a fishery with a decrease in $C P U E$ triggering management concerns (Hoggarth et al., 2006). South Africa's Linefish Management Protocol (LMP) recommends the use of such stock status indicators in the absence of a stock assessment (Griffiths et al., 1999). These indicators were set as a starting point for developing regulatory action, and incorporate corresponding conditions that advocate whether a reduction in catch and/or effort is necessary. These indicators include trends in the percent contribution to total catch and $C P U E$.

According to the LMP, a decrease greater than $75 \%$ in the proportion of L. amia in the total catch warrants a necessary decrease in fishing effort (Griffiths et al., 1999). The percent contribution of $L$.
amia to all KZN recreational fisheries decreased from 1985-2006. By taking the average contribution of L. amia to the total catch in the first five (1985-1989) and the last five years (20022006) under study, the percent difference provides a good indication of the decrease in the contribution of L. amia to the total catch along the KZN coast. From this analysis, the contribution of $L$. amia to the shore fishery has decreased by $28 \%$, while it has decreased by 77 and $84 \%$ in the skiboat and spearfishery respectively.

In addition, the LMP states that CPUE would have to be less than $25 \%$ of a historical value or $C P U E$ in an unfished protected area, for a reduction in effort to be necessary (Griffiths et al., 1999). From this study, CPUE calculated for L. amia decreased in each sector of the KZN marine recreational linefishery (1985-2006) with all trends significant ( $p<0.05$ ) except for the skiboat fishery ( $p>0.05$ ). Once again, the percent difference in the average $C P U E$ between the first five years of data collection and the last five, gives an appropriate indication of the change in CPUE along the KZN coast. In the last five years (2002-2006), the average CPUE has declined by $52 \%$, $90 \%$ and $93 \%$ in the shore, skiboat and spearfishery respectively when compared to the average CPUE during the first five years under study. Most fisheries do not have the luxury of comparing "pristine" conditions with present day conditions. Fortunately, recent work by Potts et al. (2008) on the largely unfished L. amia population off the southern Angolan coast provided an opportunity for comparison. Potts et al. (2008) calculated CPUE at 0.13 fish/angler/hour for L. amia in the Angolan shore fishery. This is much higher than the value calculated in this study of 0.0028 fish/angler/hour calculated for L. amia in the KZN shore fishery from 2002-2006, indicating a $98 \%$ decrease in CPUE (angler hours where recorded in the NMLS for the shore fishery from 2001 onwards). However, due to exclusive targeting of L. amia in the Potts' et al. (2008) study, these results are not strictly comparable with the values from this study. Nevertheless, it does give an indication of what the $C P U E$ for $L$. amia could have been for the shore fishery prior to fishing along the KZN coast.

It could be argued that the decrease in $C P U E$ seen in all sectors of the KZN recreational linefishery is due to a change in targeting and fishing techniques (Bennett, 1991; Bennett et al., 1994) rather than a decrease in abundance. However, as L. amia is an extremely popular gamefish, it is more likely that as catches of $L$. amia decreased, anglers adopted new techniques that improved efficiency in catching this species in an attempt to maintain and improve catches (Pradervand et al., 2007a). Technological advances in the shore fishery that would facilitate improved catches of $L$. amia are vast and include inter alia: graphite rods, better multiplier reels, thinner and stronger line
(monofilament, fluorocarbon and braided line), improved exchange of information on local fish abundance (cellular telephones), improved and available means of weather forecasting and associated environmental conditions (internet), as well as an increased knowledge base on fishing techniques on how to target specific fish species through DVD's, TV programmes, internet and angler influence (Pradervand et al., 2007a). In particular, grapnel sinkers and non-return bait sliding rigs have allowed for more efficient "swimming" of live bait into deeper water from the shore. Live baits such as Pomatomus saltatrix, Sarpa salpa and mullet, are extremely successful in capturing $L$. amia in KZN. The sliding rig allows live bait to remain alive for longer and its simplicity allows for anglers even of basic levels of skill to use them. The non-return function of the sliding rig also allows anglers to fish with live baits in rougher, previously unfavourable conditions, all of which should contribute to improved catches of L. amia. With rapidly improving fishing techniques, even constant catch rates in a fishery can indicate a stock decline (Hoggarth et al., 2006). However, the reduction in the catch of L. amia in the KZN linefishery, despite the improvement in fishing tackle technology, suggests that the stock may have declined even more than the catch rates suggest.

In South Africa, management regulations have been implemented with the objective of regulating fishing mortality by means of effort control (Griffiths et al., 1999). As a result, trends in CPUE of a species can be altered through the implementation of a number of regulations. Management of $L$. amia has been enforced through a combination of regulations including decommercialization (no sale), a daily bag limit and a minimum size limit since 1973 (Chapter 1). The only recent change in the regulations for L. amia was the reduction in the bag limit in April 2005 (i.e. from 5 to 2 fish/angler/day). Therefore, although these management regulations may have limited the catch of L. amia over the period under study (1984-2006), they were not sufficient to prevent the decreasing trends in CPUE seen in each sector of the KZN fishery. With the recent reduction in the daily bag limit occurring as recently as April 2005, the short period since the implementation of this new regulation meant that there was little chance for any effect on the CPUE to have been detected.

Using catch composition and CPUE as stock status indicators, as set out by the LMP, shows that catches of $L$. amia have declined along the KZN coast and that there is an excess of fishing effort directed at this species. It is thus considered likely that the fishing effort has exceeded the sustainable capacity of $L$. amia and that a reduction in effort is necessary to allow the stock to rebuild. However, as mentioned, there are a number of intrinsic sampling and non-sampling biases in the NMLS and BLSMS data used in this chapter, which cannot be ignored. These include
incomplete trip bias (as catch is inspected during some point of an angler outing rather than on completion of the outing) (Mann-Lang, 1996) and spatial bias with some regions having a higher patrolling effort than others (Pradervand, 2008). Temporal bias may affect the number of L. amia recorded caught, as the diel distribution of patrols was poorly dispersed with the majority of the patrols undertaken during the morning (6:00-12:00) (Pradervand, 2008). Poor completion of catch returns and misidentification of species may have contributed to underestimating L. amia catch. As patrols are conducted with the primary objective of compliance with data collection being a secondary objective, estimates of angler effort may be inflated during high periods of fishing activity as more patrols are undertaken during these times, particularly during the shad/elf (Pomatomus saltatrix) season (Mann-Lang, 1996).

Although this study acknowledges the intrinsic biases in the data used, and other factors that can influence CPUE trends, they are difficult to avoid and the decreasing trends in CPUE of L. amia observed in all sectors of KZN's marine recreational fishery should be regarded as a "red flag" by fishery managers. Furthermore, with such a comprehensive data set ( 22 years) for all the sectors of the KZN marine recreational fishery, this study provides a more accurate indication of actual catch trends compared to previous research undertaken on, or including, L. amia in South African waters (such as van der Elst et al., 1993; Mann et al., 1998). Nevertheless, it is acknowledged that trends in catch contribution and CPUE are merely indicators of stock abundance and where possible these trends should be confirmed by undertaking a more thorough stock assessment (Chapter 5).

## CHAPTER 3

## Tag and Recapture Assessment

### 3.1 Introduction

Considering that most of the Lichia amia stock within South African waters is found between Cape Point and Cape Vidal, they are considered to have a limited geographic distribution (van der Elst et al., 1993). The limited distribution of L. amia and the degradation of many estuaries that function as important nurseries for this species, have aroused concern about the stock status of the South African population (Chapter 1). Catch records and anecdotal information (Biden, 1948; Schoeman, 1978), as well as a preliminary study on L. amia (van der Elst et al., 1993), suggest that L. amia migrate seasonally. Clearly seasonal migration has an important bearing on the geographic abundance and thus availability of migrating L. amia to anglers, and should therefore be taken into account in a stock assessment.

Tag-recapture studies are one of the primary method used in determining migration rates and movement patterns of fish. Such studies can also be used to estimate dynamics of fish populations such as growth rate and fishing mortality (Quinn and Deriso, 1999; Kohler and Turner, 2001). Once a large number of fish are tagged and subsequently recaptured, associated temporal and spatial data allow one to provide a detailed analysis of movement and dispersal patterns (Childs, 2005). A simple method of using such data to illustrate movement patterns (e.g. time and direction) would be to draw arrows by date from the sites of release and recapture (Xiao, 1996).

In 1984 South Africa's nationwide linefish tagging project, the ORI/WWF-SA Tagging Project, was initiated by the Oceanographic Research Institute (ORI) (van der Elst and Bullen, 1993). This tagging project is aimed at promoting the voluntary tag and release of fish caught by conservationconscious fishermen and women. By doing so, the critical scientific information needed to assist in research and conservation of linefish stocks in southern Africa is generated (van der Elst and Bullen, 1993). Between 1984 and 2006, a total of 205267 fish comprising 348 species were tagged and released, whereas 10756 (5.24\%) were recaptured (Tagging News, 2007). L. amia have proved to be a popular species for tagging with a total of 6587 tagged and released along the South African
coast between 1984 and the end of 2006 (Tagging News, 2007). Moreover, L. amia have one of the higher recapture rates with 461 (7\%) recaptured during this time (Tagging News, 2007).

Through the ORI/WWF-SA Tagging Project the tagging and recapture of $L$. amia has been well established, providing a long-term data set allowing for the analysis of the movement behaviour of this species. Bearing in mind the need to incorporate migration into the stock assessment of L. amia, in this chapter the movement behaviour of L. amia is assessed through the analysis of tag-recapture data. This analysis was undertaken through examining the seasonality of the L. amia migration and by means of Hilborn's (1990) general movement model.

### 3.2 Materials and methods

## Tagging

Anglers who express an interest in being involved in the ORI/WWF-SA Tagging Project have to formally request permission. Membership is granted once the credibility of the angler is verified. Once accepted, members receive a tagging kit and an individual angler code, and are provided with an instruction manual and a list of priority species for tagging. On catching and tagging a fish, participating anglers are required to measure and record the fork length of each specimen, as well as the date and location of capture. Fish are tagged using a small plastic dart tag (Hallprint, Australia) and a hollow needle-like applicator. For teleosts, the tag is inserted into the muscle below the dorsal fin and the barb of the tag is locked behind one of the pterygiophores. On each tag, a thin transparent sheath covers a unique tag number and a return address. Lamia are primarily tagged using type A- or D-tags. A-tags, which are 114 mm long and have a diameter of 1.6 mm , are used for larger fish, i.e. those greater than 600 mm FL ( $>3 \mathrm{~kg}$ ). Type D-tags are similar in design to Atags, however they are slightly shorter ( 85 mm long x 1.6 mm diameter) and are used for smaller fish between $300-600 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL ( $0.5-3 \mathrm{~kg}$ ).

The data recorded for each tagged specimen are then sent via mail to the ORI on a pre-addressed tag card, where it is incorporated into the tagging database. Localities are converted into code numbers that correspond to the distance in kilometres from the northern border of Mozambique round to the northern border of Namibia (i.e. $1-8082$ ). When a fish is recaptured, the same information (FL,
date, locality) is recorded with the unique tag number and sent to the ORI where it is once again incorporated into the tagging database.

Data extracted from the ORI/WWF-SA tagging database were used to present the total number of $L$. amia tagged and recaptured, per month and per year, for each region and province along the South African coast between Kosi Bay and Cape Point from 1984-2006. The locality codes for each region and province along the South African Coast between Kosi Bay and Cape Point are illustrated in Table 3.1. The Eastern and Western Cape are divided into regions as described by Bullen and Mann (2006) and those regions in KZN as described in Chapter 2.

Table 3.1: Locality codes for each region and province along the South African Coast between Kosi Bay and Cape Point (3565-5653).

| Province | Region | Locality code | Locality names |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :--- |
| KZN | Maputaland (MP) | $3565-3727$ | Kosi Bay - Mission Rocks |
|  | Zululand (ZL) | $3732-3909$ | Cape Vidal - Umhlali River |
|  | Greater Durban (GD) | $3910-4005$ | Xmas Bay - Ilfracombe |
|  | South Coast (SC) | $4006-4125$ | Umkomaas Estuary - Umtamvuna River |
| Eastern | Transkei (Trans.) | $4126-4400$ | Mtentwana River- Kei River |
|  | Border (Bor.) | $4403-4546$ | Cape Morgan Light House - Fish River |
|  | Lower Eastern Cape (LEC) | $4550-4974$ | Little Fish Point - Robberg Point |
| Western | Southern Cape (SCp) | $4976-5268$ | Percys Bank - Cape Infanta |
| Cape | Lower Western Cape (LWC) | $5272-5653$ | Infanta Light House - Cape Point |

${ }^{1}$ LWC $=$ rest of Western Cape as far as Cape Point (5653)

In addition, the length frequencies of all L. amia tagged and recaptured were plotted per province along the South African coast. Unfortunately not all tagged and recaptured L. amia were measured and in some cases the length type measured (i.e. fork length or total length) was not indicated. In both cases, these data were discarded. Where length was measured as total length (TL) this was converted to FL using the TL/FL relationship for L. amia (Chapter 4).

## Movement behaviour

## Spatial and temporal movement

From all the tag-recapture data the following critical parameters were calculated: number of days at liberty $(d t)$, the minimum displacement $(D)$ in km between tag and recapture localities, and the rate of movement in terms of displacement per day at liberty (minimum speed $=D / d t$ ). Displacement and speed were considered minimal, as the route undertaken by a tagged and recaptured L. amia may not have been in a straight line from one location to another and, depending on the number of days at liberty, a fish may have moved a substantial distance but then have been recaptured in a similar locality to where it was originally tagged (Hussey et al., in press). The geographical orientation of the eastern seaboard of the South African coast is roughly northeast-southwest, thus minimum displacement of tagged L. amia were separated into net northerly and southerly movements (negative and positive latitudinal displacement respectively). The mean, minimum and maximum $D, d t$ and speed ( $D / d t$ ) were presented for northerly and southerly movements for all the tag-recapture data. Displacement ( $D$ in km ) was then plotted against release length ( mm FL ) in order to illustrate any trend in the effect of length on this parameter.

In addition, the minimum, maximum and mean (with CV's) days at liberty ( $d t$ ) of L. amia tagged were calculated in order to determine the effect of length on this parameter. For this, and in the absence of reliable maturity estimates or evidence indicating the first size at which the fish undertake their migration, L. amia were separated into size classes below ( $<587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL) above ( $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL) the minimum size limit.

In order to determine seasonal and spatial movement patterns, all L. amia recaptured more than 365 days after tagging were excluded from statistical tests and plots described below, as these fish may have undertaken more than one return migration during their time at liberty.

Using the available length data (obtained as described above) the length frequency of the L. amia at liberty $\leq 365$ days was plotted for each movement direction. Displacement was then divided into categories, namely $\leq 100 \mathrm{~km}, 101-200 \mathrm{~km}$, and $\geq 201 \mathrm{~km}$, and the tag and recapture locations of each L. amia were plotted against each corresponding month constrained within a 24 -month period of
liberty (as $d t=\leq 365$ days). To simplify assessment of seasonality of movement, general summer (October-March) and winter (April-September) months were used (Hussey et al., in press).

For trends in the direction of movement to be analysed in relation to season and distance of displacement, data were separated into seasons (mentioned above). The month in which the fish was tagged defined the season of movement. In order to assess these trends, the non-parametric KruskalWallis analysis of variance (nonparametric ANOVA or $H$-test with tied ranks) was employed, as the displacement data were not normally distributed and unequal in variance (Zar, 1999).

To determine whether a counter current inshore of the Agulhas Current assisted the northerly migration of $L$. amia in winter, a two-sample $t$-test (critical values selected at $95 \%$ CI) was used to compare those fish moving $\geq 201 \mathrm{~km}$ northwards in winter and those $\geq 201 \mathrm{~km}$ southwards in summer defined by the month in which they were tagged. The logarithmic transformation ( $X^{\prime}=$ $\log [X+1])$ of the speed data allowed the parametric $t$-test to be used. This allowed the testing of the hypothesis that a counter current inshore of the Agulhas Current assists the northward migration of certain fish species (Heydorn et al., 1978).

Tests for normality were undertaken using the Kolmogorov-Smirnov Test in Microsoft Excel (Guth, 2006) while variance was determined using the $f$-test for variance.

## Movement model

The movement of L. amia was then quantified by evaluating the tag-recapture data using the maximum likelihood based method of Hilborn's (1990) general movement model. This model has proved very versatile for a number of authors (Quinn and Deriso, 1999; Aires-da-Silva et al., 2005; McDermott et al., 2005; Lukey et al., 2006). The framework of the model consists of three components:

1. A population dynamics and movement component, which includes natural mortality, fishing mortality and movement.
2. An observation component for recaptured fish, which estimates the number of fish recaptured in comparison to the actual number of recaptures.
3. A probability component to specify the likelihood of the observed recaptures, given the parameters from the population and observation models.

For the population dynamics and observation components of the model, the revisions by Xiao (1996) and Aires-da-Silva et al. (2005) were used. Xiao (1996) explicitly included terms for instantaneous natural mortality ( $M$ ) and tag-shedding ( $\lambda$ ). For consistency, Hilborn's (1990) and Xiao's (1996) notations were used with only minimal alterations. The population dynamics component of the model is written as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widehat{N}_{i, a, t+1}=\sum_{j=1}^{n} \widehat{N}_{i, j, t}\left(1-F_{j, t}\right) e^{-(M+\lambda)} p_{j, a}+T_{i, a, t} \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where: $\widehat{\widehat{N}}_{i, a, t}=$ the predicted number of tagged fish of group $i$ present in area $a$ at time $t$,
$F_{j, t}=$ fishing mortality in area $j$ at time $t$,
$p_{j, a}=$ probability of movement from area $j$ to area $a$ (assumed to be constant),
$T_{i, a, t}=$ the number of fish tagged from group $i$ in area $a$ at time $t$.

Instead of considering additional tags as new tag groups, this approach also allows for recruitment into a tag group through the addition of newly tagged and released fish into that group at time $t$ $\left(T_{i, a, t}\right)$ (Aires-da-Silva et al., 2005). A tag group $i$, according to Hilborn (1990) and Xiao (1996), is a group of fish tagged in a spatio-temporal stratum but can be extended to include distinctive factors such as sex, size etc. For this reason, two tag groups released independently in two geographical areas along the South African coast were considered, namely the number of L. amia tagged in KZN ( $T_{i, n, t}$ ) and in the Cape ( $T_{i, c, t}$ ). This allowed the seasonal movement of L. amia between KZN and the Cape (Eastern and Western Cape as far as Cape Point) to be quantified. With a one year time step assumed in the model, the tag groups $T_{i, n, t}$ and $T_{i, c, t}$ were calculated as the number of L. amia tagged in each area during each year from 1984-2006.

Employing Pauly's (1980) empirical equation, van der Elst et al. (1993) obtained an instantaneous natural mortality $(M)$ estimate of 0.4 year $^{-1}$ for $L$. amia along the entire South African coast. This estimate of $M$ for $L$. amia was used in the model. An estimate for tag-shedding and tag-associated mortality ( $\lambda$ ) was not available as no double tagging or captive tagging of $L$. amia has been undertaken to date. Without a reliable estimate, and considering certain physical features and
behavioural traits of L. amia, as well as field observations and recapture rates, tag-shedding and tagassociated mortality could be negligible and thus $\lambda$ was assumed to be zero (see discussion below). The model was however, run with a range of $\lambda$ values ( 0.1 to 0.4 year $^{-1}$ ) to see the effect of tagshedding on the parameter estimates.
L. amia is a popular gamefish to tag and has a relatively high recapture rate (7\%) (Tagging News, 2007). However, as they are also considered to be a prize trophy fish and valuable food source, a large proportion of L. amia are retained once captured. Consequently, relatively few tagged L. amia are re-released if recaptured. For this reason, if in Eq. 3.1 the fishing mortality was calculated as $F=q E$, it would represent a probability of capture and not necessarily the actual mortality rate as described in Hilborn's (1990) method (Aires-da-Silva et al., 2005). The true harvest (fishing mortality rate) in area $j$ at time $t$ would thus be derived from the product of the "capture rate" and the "killing rate" $\left(K_{j, t}\right)$ that was calculated from the proportion of $L$. amia re-released once recaptured in area $j$ at time $t$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{j, t}=q_{j} E_{j, t} K_{j, t} \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $q_{j}$ is the catchability coefficient in area $j$ and $E_{j, t}$ is the fishing effort in area $j$ at time $t$. By calculating $F_{j, t}$ in this manner, it was assumed that fishing mortality in area $j$ was proportional to the fishing effort directed at $L$. amia in area $j$, which was calculated as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{j, t}=\frac{\text { No. anglers inspected }}{\text { Total km patrolled }} \times \frac{\text { No. L.amia counted }}{\text { Total fish counted }} \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the product of the total fishing effort and the proportion of L. amia in the total catch, was assumed to be proportional to the fishing effort directed at L. amia (Butterworth et al., 1989).

The observation component of the model specifies the relationship between the observed recaptures and the expected tag recaptures in a specific area. An extra parameter was added to Hilborn's (1990) observation component of the movement model:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widehat{R}_{i, a, t}=\widehat{N}_{i, a, t} q_{a} E_{a, t} \beta_{a, t} \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\hat{R}_{i, a, t}$ is the expected number of tag recoveries from tag group $i$ in area $a$ at time $t$ and $\beta_{a, t}$ (the added parameter) is the proportion of recaptures which are reported in a useable form. The nonreporting rate of tags was determined as $30 \%$ during the National Marine Linefish Survey conducted from 1994-1996 (B. Mann, ORI, unpublished data) and this meant $\beta=0.7$. It was assumed that when tagged fish were recaptured, it was reported with a tag number, date and location of recapture, which is the basic data required for the tag recapture to be useable.
$P_{j, a}$ and $q_{j}$ needed to be estimated in Equations 3.1, 3.2 and 3.4 and, according to Hilborn (1990) and Hilborn and Walters (1992), the sampling distribution of tag recoveries can be estimated by a Poisson distribution. A poisson distribution is a discrete distribution in which the probability density function generates actual probabilities of an observed event occurring in a set period (Haddon, 2001). Therefore, the probability of the expected number of tag recoveries ( $\hat{R}_{i, a, t} t=1 \ldots n$ ) given the observed number of tagged recoveries $\left(R_{i, a, t}\right)$ is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
P\left(R_{i, a, t}\right)=\frac{e^{-\widehat{R}_{i, a, t} R_{i, a, t}^{R_{i, t}}}}{R_{i, a, t}} \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

$R_{i, a, t}$ is the actual observed number of tag recoveries reported (recaptures) of group $i$ in area $a$ at time $t$ (i.e. each year). The log transformation of Eq. 3.5 then denotes the likelihood ( $L$ ) of the number of recoveries being reported (Hilborn, 1990):

$$
\begin{equation*}
L\left(R_{i, a, t} \mid \hat{R}_{i, a, t}\right)=\frac{e^{-\hat{R}_{i, a, t} R_{i, a, t}^{R_{i, t}}}}{R_{i, a, t}!} \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

The total likelihood function is then:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\prod_{i, a, t} \frac{e^{-\hat{R}_{i, a, t} \hat{R}_{i, a, t, t}^{R_{i, t}}}}{R_{i, a, t}!} \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

The model parameters are then estimated by minimizing the total negative log-likelihood:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i, a, t}\left[\hat{R}_{i, a, t}-R_{i, a, t} \log \left(\hat{R}_{i, a, t}\right)\right] \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

The different components of the model and the total negative log-likelihood (Eq. 3.8) were calculated in Microsoft Excel and were minimized using the optimisation routine SOLVER. The 95\% CL for the estimated parameters were calculated using the likelihood profile in Poptools (Hood, 2008), an "add-in" for Microsoft Excel that facilitates analysis of population models. A sensitivity analysis was undertaken by running the model with different values of natural mortality ( $M$ year ${ }^{-1}$, see below) and discrepancies in the expected recaptures from the observed values were examined using "deviance" (McCullagh and Nelder, 1989), as recommended by Hilborn (1990):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\text { deviance }_{t}=-2\left[L\left(R_{i, a, t} \mid \hat{R}_{i, a, t}\right)-L\left(R_{i, a, t} \mid R_{i, a, t}\right)\right] \tag{3.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

The framework for the movement model involved seven steps with $n$ and $c$ selected as the indices for KZN and the Cape respectively:

1. Tag groups were identified separately namely, $T_{i, n, t}$ and $T_{i, c, t}$ which were the number of $L$. amia tagged each year (1984-2006) in KZN and in the Cape respectively;
2. Input parameters were then selected for $\mathrm{KZN}\left(q_{n}\right.$ and $\left.p_{n, c}\right)$ and for the Cape $\left(q_{c}\right.$ and $\left.p_{c, n}\right) . M$ was set at 0.4 year $^{-1}$ for both areas;
3. The effort directed at $L$. amia in $\mathrm{KZN}\left(E_{n, t}\right)$ and in the Cape $\left(E_{c, t}\right)$ was then calculated (Eq. 3.3), as well as the "killing rate" from the number of tagged fish re-released each year ( $K_{n, t}$ and $K_{c, t}$ );
4. Initial values of the fishing mortality (Eq. 3.2) and the predicted number of tagged fish (Eq. 3.1) in each area at time $t$ were established after step $3\left(F_{n, t}, \widehat{N}_{i, n, t}\right.$ and $\left.F_{c, t}, \widehat{\widehat{N}}_{i, c, t}\right)$;
5. The total negative log-likelihood was then minimised using SOLVER estimating $F_{n, t}, \widehat{N}_{i, n, t}$, $F_{c, t}$ and $\widehat{N}_{i, c, t} ;$
6. Observed and expected tag recoveries in KZN and the Cape were then plotted and deviance between the two calculated;
7. Sensitivity analysis was undertaken by re-running the model with $M=0.3$ and 0.5 year $^{-1}$, this was done to test whether $M$ was confounded with $p_{n, c}$ and $p_{c, n}$ (if so, as $M$ increases $p_{n, c}$ and $p_{c, n}$ are expected to increase).

Assumptions made when undertaking the movement model included: (i) there was movement between KZN and the Cape that did not affect survival; (ii) mortality was only a function of the instantaneous annual fishing mortality and natural mortality rate. Furthermore, tagged fish were
assumed to be fully mixed with the untagged population and that behaviour of tagged fish was the same as untagged fish (migration, chance of recapture and harvest rate), thus tagged individuals were assumed to be representative of the total population.

### 3.3 Results

## Tagging

By December 2006, 6456 L. amia had been tagged and 457 (7.08\%) recaptured along the South African coast since 1985 (Table 3.2). Tagging and recaptures were not distributed equally along the South African coast (Figure 3.1). A total of 4181 L. amia ( $65 \%$ ) were tagged in the Eastern Cape, 1781 (28\%) in the Western Cape and 491 (8\%) in KZN. The highest number (51\%) of recaptures also occurred in the Eastern Cape ( $n=235$ ), with $31 \%$ in KZN ( $n=141$ ), and the least in the Western Cape ( $n=81$ or $18 \%$ ). The bordering LEC and SCp regions had the highest number of $L$. amia tagged with much fewer in the remaining regions (<9\%). Similarly the highest number of $L$. amia were re-caught in these two regions with far fewer ( $\langle 8 \%$ ) in the remaining regions, with the exception of the GD region (Figure 3.1).

Although fewer L. amia were tagged and recaptured in KZN than in the Cape, the recapture rate in KZN was far higher (Table 3.2). Of the L. amia recaptured, the majority ( $66 \%$ ) were recaptured within 12 months of release, $21 \%$ were recaptured within 24 months and the remainder ( $13 \%$ ) >24 months at liberty (Figure 3.2).

Only $16 \%(n=71)$ of the 457 L. amia recaptured were re-released. However, this value is probably higher as some anglers re-tag, recaptured $L$. amia with their own tags, removing the original tag as to increase their own total number of fish tagged. This practice is problematic when undertaking stock assessments with tag-recapture models such as Schnabel and Petersen population estimates, which need to know the number of recaptured fish that are re-tagged.

Table 3.2: Total number of Lichia amia tagged and recaptured in each region along the South African coast (1984-2006) with corresponding recapture rates.

| Province | Region | No. <br> Tagged | No. <br> Recaptured | Recapture <br> Rate (\%) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| KZN | MP | 5 | 0 | 0.00 |
|  | ZL | 67 | 28 | 41.79 |
|  | GD | 275 | 78 | 28.36 |
|  | SC | 144 | 35 | 24.31 |
| Eastern | Trans. | 533 | 23 | 4.32 |
|  | Bor. | 186 | 19 | 10.22 |
|  | LEC | 3465 | 193 | 5.57 |
| Western | SCp | 1401 | 57 | 4.07 |
| Cape | LWC | 380 | 24 | 6.32 |
| SA coast |  | $\mathbf{6 4 5 6}$ | $\mathbf{4 5 7}$ | $\mathbf{7 . 0 8}$ |



Figure 3.1: Recapture rate and percentage of Lichia amia tagged and recaptured in each region along the South African coast 1984-2006.


Figure 3.2: Number of recaptures and months at liberty of Lichia amia tagged along the South African coast (1984-2006).

In KZN and the Western Cape, the number of L. amia tagged remained fairly constant with only slight inter-annual variations (Figure 3.3a). However, in the Eastern Cape, large peaks occurred in the number of L. amia tagged in 1991-93 and 2005-06. The number of recaptures in the Eastern Cape followed a similar trend to the number tagged, i.e. peaks in 1991-94 and 2006 (Figure 3.3b). Recaptures in KZN were highly variable each year (especially between 1991 and 2003), with those in the Western Cape remaining reasonably constant throughout the given time period except for a slight peak in 1990, 1994, and 1997, and a sharp decrease in 1996 (Figure 3.3b).


Figure 3.3: Annual variation in the total number of Lichia amia tagged (a) and recaptured (b) per province along the South African coast (1984-2006).

Both tagging and recaptures of L. amia were highest in the summer months (October-March) in the Eastern and Western Cape (Figure 3.4a and b). During the summer months, few fish were tagged and/or recaptured in KZN. During the winter months (April-September), far more L. amia were tagged and recaptured in KZN with the opposite occurring in the Eastern and Western Cape (Figure $3.4 a$ and $b)$.


Figure 3.4: Monthly variation in the total number of Lichia amia tagged (a) and recaptured (b) per province along the South African coast (1984-2006).

Although 6456 L. amia were tagged, the length information for only 4429 of these fish could be verified (i.e. type of measurement indicated). Of these, 1109 fish were tagged and 119 recaptured that were greater than the legal size limit ( $>587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL), while 3124 were tagged and 180 recaptured smaller than the size limit (<587 mm FL). Thus, the recapture rate of legal size L. amia was much higher than that of undersize fish, i.e. $10.74 \%$ and $5.76 \%$ respectively.

Of the L. amia with verified lengths, 292 were tagged in KZN (average length $=747 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL). Very few of these $L$. amia were below the size limit ( $22 \%$ ), while $78 \%$ were above and a high proportion $(46 \%)$ of fish were larger than the length at $50 \%$ maturity ( 800 mm FL) (Figure 3.5a). In
comparison to KZN, more fish (2 754) of a smaller average size ( 501 mm FL ) were tagged in the Eastern Cape. Of these, the majority ( $75 \%$ ) were under the legal size limit (Figure 3.5a). A large number of $L$. amia tagged in the Western Cape also had release lengths which could be verified ( $n=$ 1 383). These fish had a similar average length to those in the Eastern Cape ( 509 mm FL), and the majority were below the size limit (79\%). In the Western Cape, the highest proportion (19\%) of the L. amia tagged were around 550 mm FL (Figure 3.5a).

The length frequency of L. amia recaptured in each province was very similar to that of those tagged, especially in the Eastern Cape (Figure 3.5b). In KZN a small number of L. amia $<587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL were tagged, while no fish this size were recaptured. Similarly, very few L. amia recaptured in the Western Cape were below the legal size limit, with the majority between 587 and 800 mm FL (the size limit and length at $50 \%$ maturity). With such a small percentage of juvenile L. amia caught in KZN, these data highlight the importance of estuaries and protected inshore surf-zones in the Cape as nursery areas for juvenile L. amia (Lasiak, 1981; Smale and Kok, 1983; Bennett, 1989a; Bennett, 1989b; Whitfield, 1990).


Figure 3.5: Length frequency of Lichia amia tagged (a) and recaptured (b) per province along the South African coast (1984-2006).

## Movement behaviour

## Spatial and temporal movement

When considering all the tag-recapture data, a large proportion of all the recaptured $L$. amia showed northerly movement (39\%) while far less showed southerly movement ( $17 \%$ ) (Table 3.3). The majority ( $45 \%$ ) however, showed no movement as they were tagged and recaptured in the same location ( $D=0 \mathrm{~km}$ ). Of the fish that showed no movement, 192 ( $94 \%$ ) were tagged and recaptured
in the Eastern and Western Cape. Most of these fish (85\%) were at liberty for $\leq 365$ days and these were most likely juvenile fish tagged in estuaries that did not take part in the northerly migration to KZN for winter. The lack of movement by these fish could also have been a result of mouth closure of an estuary, which occurs when there is insufficient rain and/or wave action to maintain the mouth open and fish become trapped in the estuary. Sub-adult and adult fish were also recaptured in the same location as initially released because, similar to juvenile fish, they can also become trapped in estuaries and/or because they returned to the same location after migrating (i.e. because of abundance of prey). In addition, each year anglers target L. amia in locations that produce good catches (e.g. Tugela River mouth along the KZN coast, Chapter 2), which may be a site where fish aggregate.

Table 3.3: Summary of movement data for all tagged Lichia amia recaptured (1984-2006).

| Movement <br> direction | Displacement in $\mathbf{k m}(\boldsymbol{D})$ |  | Days at liberty $(\boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{t})$ |  |  | Speed in km/day $(\boldsymbol{D} / \boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{t})$ |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Mean | Min. | Max. | Mean | Min. | Max. | Mean | Min. | Max. |
| North $(\boldsymbol{n}=\mathbf{1 7 7})$ | 586.05 | 1 | 1670 | 534.77 | 8 | 1660 | 1.68 | 0.01 | 12.28 |
| South $(\boldsymbol{n}=\mathbf{7 6})$ | 218.63 | 1 | 1186 | 346.75 | 7 | 2563 | 1.51 | 0.01 | 13.87 |
| Zero $(\boldsymbol{n}=\mathbf{2 0 4})$ | - | - | - | 176.62 | 1 | 3239 | - | - | - |
| Overall mean | $\mathbf{2 6 3 . 3 4}$ |  |  | $\mathbf{3 5 2 . 7 1}$ |  |  | $\mathbf{0 . 9 0}$ |  |  |

Larger L. amia undertook greater movements than smaller L. amia (Figure 3.6). An increase in the distance travelled as fish approach the legal minimum size limit ( $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{FL}$ ) is clear. In addition, L. amia $>500 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL showed high variability in the distance moved compared to smaller fish (indicated by the high standard deviation). Fish in the 950 mm FL size class showed the greatest variability in distance moved, although few fish $>950 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL were tagged and recaptured (Figure 3.6). L. amia < 500 mm FL undertook small movements with those in the 350 mm FL size class ( $n=$ 23) all recaptured in the same location as released and did not undertake any noticeable movement.


Fork length (mm)
Figure 3.6: Mean displacement (km) and standard deviation by different size classes of recaptured Lichia amia. Numbers in parenthesis indicate sample size.

For those tagged and recaptured $L$. amia that undertook northerly and southerly movements, once over the legal size limit ( $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL) fish are more likely to be recaptured than smaller fish (i.e. lower days at liberty than smaller fish) (Table 3.4).

Table 3.4: Minimum, maximum and mean (with CV's as a proportion) days at liberty ( $d t$ ) for Lichia amia tagged (below and above the legal size limit) and recapture after migrating north and south along the South African coast (1984-2006).

| L. amia | Days at liberty |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| size $(\mathbf{m m}$ FL) | Min. | Max. | Mean (CV) |
| $<587(n=81)$ | 20 | 1660 | $594(0.68)$ |
| $\geq 587(n=53)$ | 8 | 1599 | $399(0.91)$ |

When considering only those L. amia recaptured $\leq 365$ days after tagging, the majority which had moved north and/or south were close to or above the legal size limit ( $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL) (Figure 3.7). Conversely, the majority of $L$. amia that were tagged and recaptured in the same locality were immature and below the minimum legal size limit (Figure 3.7).


Figure 3.7: Length frequency of Lichia amia tagged and recaptured along the South African coast that had undertaken northerly, southerly or no movement, with a time at liberty $\leq 365$ days. Dashed line represents minimum size limit.

Fewer L. amia at liberty for $\leq 365$ days had undertaken southerly than northerly movements (Table 3.5). The majority ( $52 \%$ ) of the fish that had moved north, undertook large ( $\geq 201 \mathrm{~km}$ ) movements, while $38 \%$ undertook small ( $\leq 100 \mathrm{~km}$ ) and only $10 \%$ medium (101-200 km) movements (Table 3.5). Whereas, the majority ( $49 \%$ ) of those fish that had moved south were recaptured within 100 km of the tagging location, $47 \%$ undertook large southward movements and only $5 \%$ moved between 101-200 km (Table 3.5).

There was a significant difference in the displacement ( $\geq 201 \mathrm{~km}$ ) of L. amia moving north and south in winter and summer months ( $H_{c}=87.663, \chi^{2}{ }_{0.05,3}=7.815$ ). The majority $(80 \%)$ of these fish moved north after being tagged in summer, while the majority of fish moved south (54\%) after being tagged in winter.

No significant difference ( $p>0.05$ ) in the minimum speed ( $\mathrm{km} / \mathrm{day}$ ) of migration was detected between fish that had moved $\geq 201 \mathrm{~km}$ northward in Autumn/Winter when compared to fish that moved southward in Spring/Summer ( $p=0.363, t(1.72)=0.36$ ).

Table 3.5: Summary of northerly and southerly movement data for recaptured Lichia amia at liberty for $\leq 365$ days (1984-2006).

| North ( $n=79$ ) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Movement distance (km) | D (km) |  |  | $d t$ (days) |  |  | D/dt (km/day) |  |  |
|  | Mean | Min. | Max. | Mean | Min. | Max. | Mean | Min. | Max. |
| $\leq 100(n=30)$ | 25.63 | 1 | 89 | 135.87 | 8 | 363 | 0.48 | 0.03 | 5.75 |
| 101-200 ( $n=8$ ) | 150.13 | 121 | 192 | 121.63 | 29 | 255 | 1.98 | 0.52 | 4.24 |
| $\geq 201(n=41)$ | 742.88 | 257 | 1443 | 227.27 | 70 | 361 | 4.14 | 0.89 | 12.28 |
| South ( $n=44$ ) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Movement distance (km) | D (km) |  |  | $d t$ (days) |  |  | D/dt (km/day) |  |  |
|  | Mean | Min. | Max. | Mean | Min. | Max. | Mean | Min. | Max. |
| $\leq 100(n=24)$ | 27.21 | 1 | 89 | 135.29 | 7 | 365 | 0.56 | 0.02 | 7.50 |
| 101-200 ( $n=6$ ) | 159.83 | 108 | 198 | 190.00 | 62 | 326 | 1.22 | 0.51 | 3.16 |
| $\geq 201(n=14)$ | 608.57 | 217 | 1173 | 158.64 | 174 | 208 | 5.75 | 0.67 | 13.87 |

The short ( $<100 \mathrm{~km}$ ) or medium (101-200 km) movements of individual $L$. amia that were at liberty for $\leq 365$ days are shown in Figure 3.8 and 3.9. Although small-scale movements (north and south) were recorded through the constrained 24-month period, a large number of individual L. amia began moving northwards with the onset of winter and southwards with the onset of summer (Figure 3.8 and 3.9). However, of the individual L. amia that were tagged and moved short or medium distances, the majority were tagged in the Cape and very few in KZN.


Figure 3.8: Displacement (km) by location and month of tagging and recapture for individual Lichia amia moving $\leq 100 \mathrm{~km}$ and 101-200 km north from their tagging location.


Figure 3.9: Displacement (km) by location and month of tagging and recapture for individual Lichia amia moving $\leq 100 \mathrm{~km}$ and 101-200 km south from their tagging location.

When considering the large ( $\geq 201 \mathrm{~km}$ ) northerly and southerly movements, the majority of L. amia tagged in the Cape during the summer months (January-March) were recaptured in KZN in winter (April-September) of the same year (Figure 3.10). Correspondingly, the majority of L. amia undertaking $\geq 201 \mathrm{~km}$ movements southwards were tagged in winter on the lower KZN south coast, and recaptured five months later in the Cape during summer (Figure 3.10). Those L. amia were tagged in the Cape later on in the year in summer (October-December) and moved $\geq 201 \mathrm{~km}$ north, were recaptured the following year in KZN during winter (April-September). The large northerly and southerly movements of these individual L. amia illustrate the seasonal migration patterns of sub-adult and adult $L$. amia.

Figure 3.10: Displacement (km) by location and month of tagging and recapture for individual Lichia amia moving $\geq 201 \mathrm{~km}$ north and south from their tagging location. Bold lines indicate means.

## Movement model

Unfortunately, when modelling the movement of L. amia it was not possible to estimate fishing effort directed at L. amia along the Cape coast $\left(E_{c, t}\right)$ each year from 1984-2006 (see Eq. 3.3). $E_{c, t}$ was estimated by combining raw data from a roving creel census conducted in the former Transkei during 1997 (Mann et al., 2003) and from another census conducted along the rest of the Eastern Cape coast (Kei Mouth to Stil Bay) during 1994-96 (Brouwer, 1997). $E_{c, t}$ thus was assumed to be constant and was calculated as 0.002 angler $/ \mathrm{km}$. This was considerably lower than the average fishing effort directed at L. amia in KZN during the period 1984-2006, which was calculated as 0.012 angler/km based on the EKZNW shore patrol data (Chapter 2). The average "killing rate" (1984-2006) was also higher in KZN ( $90 \%$ of recaptured $L$. amia were killed) than in the Cape ( $80 \%$ killed).

The probability of movement ( $p_{n, c}$ and $p_{c, n}$ ) was estimated with relatively narrow confidence limits, and increased with increasing rates of $M$ as these were confounded within the model. The catchability coefficients ( $q_{n}$ and $q_{c}$ ) were not affected by increasing rates of $M$, but were the most poorly estimated parameters with wider confidence limits than the those estimated for $p_{n, c}$ and $p_{c, n}$. Surprisingly, for all values of $M$, the model predicted a higher probability of movement from KZN to the Cape $\left(p_{n, c}\right)$ than from the Cape to $\operatorname{KZN}\left(p_{c, n}\right)$. This was in contrast to that shown in Table 3.3 and Figures 3.8-3.10 (i.e. more L. amia undertook northerly migrations from the Cape to KZN). The average fishing mortality was higher for $L$. amia in KZN ( 0.05 year $^{-1}$ ) than in the Cape ( 0.03 year $^{-1}$ ). This was to be expected with higher fishing effort directed at L. amia in KZN than in the Cape. Estimated fishing mortality rates for L. amia in KZN per year (1984-2006) for $M=0.4$ year $^{-1}$ (van der Elst et al., 1993), showed a slight decreasing trend mainly because of decreasing fishing effort directed at L. amia in KZN over the given time period (Figure 3.11).

Table 3.6: Movement model parameter estimates for Lichia amia at different $M$ values from all tagrecapture data (1984-2006) with $95 \%$ confidence limits.

|  | $\boldsymbol{M = 0 . 3}$ year $^{-1}$ |  | $\boldsymbol{M}=\mathbf{0 . 4}$ year $^{-1}$ |  | $\boldsymbol{M}=\mathbf{0 . 5}$ year $^{-1}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Parameter | Estimate | $\mathbf{9 5 \%} \mathbf{C L}$ | Estimate | $\mathbf{9 5 \%} \mathbf{C L}$ | Estimate | $\mathbf{9 5 \%} \mathbf{C L}$ |
| $p_{n, c}$ | 1.32 | $1.24-1.38$ | 1.46 | $1.41-1.50$ | 1.61 | $1.51-1.69$ |
| $p_{c, n}$ | 0.79 | $0.60-0.93$ | 0.88 | $0.66-1.03$ | 0.97 | $0.73-1.14$ |
| $q_{n}$ | 5.04 | $3.54-7.18$ | 5.04 | $3.54-7.18$ | 5.04 | $3.54-7.18$ |
| $q_{c}$ | 17.86 | $13.75-23.39$ | 17.86 | $13.75-23.39$ | 17.86 | $13.7-23.39$ |



Year
Figure 3.11: Estimated fishing mortality rates ( year $^{-1}$ ) for Lichia amia in KwaZulu-Natal (19842006). Parameter estimates are shown in Table 3.6 for $M=0.4$ year $^{-1}$.

The observed and expected (model-derived) recaptures of tagged L. amia along the South African coast (1984-2006) showed good correlation and resulted in relatively low deviance values (Figure 3.12 and Table 3.7). Lower values of deviance indicate better agreement between the observed and expected recaptures of tagged L. amia. With far more data for the Cape, the model fitted the Cape data better than the KZN data and deviance was thus lower between the observed and expected recaptures in the Cape than those in KZN (Figure 3.12 and Table 3.7).

In an attempt to improve the fit to the data, only those $L$. amia that were tagged $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL were used and the model was re-run. L. amia $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL are expected to undertake large migrations and not be confined to estuaries (Figure 3.6). The values of $E_{n, t}$ and $E_{c, t}$ used when initially running
the model with all the tag-recapture data were left unchanged when re-running the model, as these estimates could not be made size-specific. $M$ was set at 0.4 year $^{-1}$ (van der Elst et al., 1993).

The average killing rate of L. amia that were tagged $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL was slightly lower for both KZN ( $80 \%$ ) and the Cape ( $70 \%$ ) than when using all the data. The estimated fishing mortality in KZN decreased from 1992-2006 (Figure 3.13), the average of which ( 0.19 year $^{-1}$ ) was once again higher than that estimated for the Cape ( 0.03 year $^{-1}$ ). In years where no L. amia smaller than the minimum size limit were caught or recaptured, $F$ could not be estimated. Since the killing rate was estimated as zero, in these years, these data were omitted when plotting $F$ against time (Figure 3. 14).


Figure 3.12: Observed and expected recaptures of Lichia amia from all tag-recapture data in KwaZulu-Natal and the Cape (19842006).

Table 3.7: Observed and expected recaptures, with calculated deviance, of Lichia amia in KwaZulu-Natal and the Cape (19842006).

| Year | KZN |  |  | Cape |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Obs. | Exp. | Dev. | Obs. | Exp. | Dev. |
| 84 | 0 | 0.35 | -0.74 | 1 | 0.30 | 1.65 |
| 85 | 2 | 0.46 | 3.79 | 6 | 3.78 | 3.67 |
| 86 | 0 | 0.75 | -0.43 | 6 | 6.42 | 1.55 |
| 87 | 2 | 0.35 | 4.84 | 5 | 7.04 | 0.48 |
| 88 | 1 | 1.25 | 0.11 | 5 | 10.46 | 5.01 |
| 89 | 4 | 6.99 | 4.83 | 12 | 12.05 | 0.24 |
| 90 | 4 | 8.26 | 3.12 | 12 | 12.84 | 4.29 |
| 91 | 3 | 13.96 | 16.25 | 24 | 18.69 | 5.70 |
| 92 | 9 | 10.63 | 3.12 | 24 | 21.47 | 3.27 |
| 93 | 15 | 4.95 | 17.29 | 30 | 26.67 | 4.95 |
| 94 | 7 | 7.97 | 4.04 | 35 | 24.72 | 8.76 |
| 95 | 19 | 8.99 | 13.51 | 25 | 21.04 | 1.11 |
| 96 | 4 | 3.38 | 1.26 | 15 | 15.84 | 4.63 |
| 97 | 11 | 6.25 | 4.43 | 18 | 14.87 | 5.50 |
| 98 | 13 | 6.69 | 7.97 | 18 | 13.56 | 4.53 |
| 99 | 11 | 2.81 | 16.71 | 7 | 10.95 | 5.76 |
| 00 | 8 | 7.54 | 2.30 | 9 | 11.27 | 1.58 |
| 01 | 5 | 9.00 | 1.55 | 11 | 11.01 | 0.05 |
| 02 | 3 | 8.07 | 3.53 | 8 | 9.66 | 3.12 |
| 03 | 1 | 9.28 | 11.29 | 7 | 9.76 | 4.05 |
| 04 | 7 | 6.00 | 0.32 | 6 | 9.93 | 5.58 |
| 05 | 6 | 4.55 | 2.40 | 10 | 16.15 | 3.11 |
| 06 | 6 | 9.57 | 3.67 | 22 | 27.48 | 4.16 |



Figure 3.13: Estimated fishing mortality rates ( year $^{-1}$ ) for Lichia amia that were tagged at $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL in KwaZulu-Natal (1987-2006). Parameter estimates are shown in Table 3.8 for $M=0.4$ year $^{-1}$.

The probability of movement from the Cape to $\mathrm{KZN}\left(p_{c, n}\right)$ was slightly higher than that from KZN to the Cape ( $p_{n, c}$ ), while the catchability coefficient was higher in KZN than in the Cape (Table 3.8). The probability of movement from KZN to the Cape ( $p_{n, c}$ ) and the Cape to KZN ( $p_{c, n}$ ) was smaller than that estimated when using all the tag-recapture data for $M=0.4$ year $^{-1}$ (Table 3.6). The catchability coefficients ( $q_{n}$ and $q_{c}$ ) were much higher for the $L$. amia tagged $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL, especially in KZN $\left(q_{n}\right)$. The wider range of confidence limits suggests that the parameters were not as well estimated as in the model when using all the data (Table 3.6). However, when considering the fit of the expected to the observed recaptures (Figure 3.14 and Table 3.9), the expected recaptures were a lot closer to the observed values resulting in lower deviance between the two than when running the model with all the data.

Table 3.8: Movement model parameter estimates for Lichia amia tagged at $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL (19872006) for $M=0.4$ year $^{-1}$ with $95 \%$ confidence limits.

| Parameter | Estimate | $\mathbf{9 5 \%}$ CL |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $p_{n, c}$ | 0.72 | $0.45-0.95$ |
| $p_{c, n}$ | 0.79 | $0.33-1.11$ |
| $q_{n}$ | 29.27 | $19.51-41.25$ |
| $q_{c}$ | 25.40 | $15.17-40.31$ |



Figure 3.14: Observed and expected recaptures of Lichia amia tagged at $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL in KwaZulu-Natal and the Cape (19872006).

Table 3.9: Observed and expected recaptures, with calculated deviance, of Lichia amia tagged at $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL in KwaZuluNatal and the Cape (1987-2006).

| Year | KZN |  |  | Cape |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Obs. | Exp. | Dev. | Obs. | Exp. | Dev. |
| 87 | 0 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0 | 0.04 | -0.31 |
| 88 | 0 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0 | 0.02 | -0.19 |
| 89 | 0 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0 | 0.08 | -0.58 |
| 90 | 0 | 0.34 | -0.73 | 0 | 0.08 | -0.56 |
| 91 | 0 | 0.26 | -0.70 | 1 | 0.80 | 0.04 |
| 92 | 1 | 0.93 | 0.01 | 0 | 0.78 | -1.95 |
| 93 | 4 | 1.59 | 4.11 | 3 | 5.36 | 1.50 |
| 94 | 4 | 3.70 | 2.00 | 14 | 5.35 | 7.02 |
| 95 | 7 | 4.12 | 2.54 | 6 | 5.83 | 0.00 |
| 96 | 1 | 0.45 | 0.88 | 5 | 4.57 | 0.04 |
| 97 | 8 | 10.14 | 0.89 | 2 | 2.71 | 0.23 |
| 98 | 10 | 10.55 | 2.58 | 5 | 3.38 | 0.60 |
| 99 | 5 | 2.89 | 3.71 | 1 | 2.64 | 1.85 |
| 00 | 5 | 5.10 | 0.32 | 1 | 1.93 | 0.68 |
| 01 | 3 | 5.23 | 1.41 | 3 | 2.14 | 0.28 |
| 02 | 2 | 2.67 | 1.32 | 3 | 2.46 | 0.10 |
| 03 | 0 | 3.09 | 3.41 | 2 | 2.69 | 0.22 |
| 04 | 5 | 3.17 | 1.77 | 2 | 3.55 | 0.97 |
| 05 | 5 | 1.74 | 5.97 | 4 | 3.55 | 0.05 |
| 06 | 3 | 6.33 | 2.73 | 4 | 8.02 | 3.12 |

### 3.4 Discussion

L. amia are a highly sought-after gamefish and have proved to be a popular fish to tag. This species has a relatively high tag and recapture rate with 6456 fish tagged and 457 ( $7.08 \%$ ) recaptured from 1984-2006. With such a high recapture rate, the majority of L. amia were recaptured within a year of release. On a provincial and regional scale, the majority of L. amia were tagged and recaptured in the Eastern and Western Cape, especially in the lower Eastern Cape (LEC) and Southern Cape $(\mathrm{SCp})$ regions (Table 3.2). The majority of these fish were juvenile L. amia smaller than the legal minimum size limit ( $<587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL) and were caught in estuaries and near river mouths. In contrast, the majority of $L$. amia tagged and recaptured in KZN were caught in the surf-zone and were $\geq 587$ mm FL. Far fewer L. amia were tagged and recaptured in KZN, with the exception of in the Greater Durban (GD) region that had the second highest number of recaptures after the lower Eastern Cape region. Recapture rates were higher in KZN than in the Cape (Table 3.2).

The annual trends in the number of $L$. amia tagged and recaptured in KZN and the Western Cape from 1984-2006 were reasonably consistent. In contrast, the number of L. amia tagged and recaptured in the Eastern Cape varied more than in the other two provinces. Seasonal differences in the number of L. amia tagged and recaptured in the Cape and KZN clearly indicate seasonal abundance in both areas. In KZN the majority of L. amia were tagged and recaptured in winter/spring months (May-November) with the inverse occurring in the Western and Eastern Cape. More L. amia were tagged throughout the year in the Eastern Cape than in the Western Cape and KZN.

Differential patterns and rates of tagging and recapture, as seen for L. amia along the South African coast, are related to fishing effort, seasonal abundance (Gillanders et al., 2001), life-history characteristics, tag-shedding, tag-associated mortalities (Kohler and Turner, 2001) and environmental factors. According to Sheridan and Castro Melendez (1990) spatial and temporal variations in fishing effort will influence patterns of recapture of tagged organisms, with fewer releases and recaptures in regions along the coast with lower fishing effort. The high recapture rate along the KZN coast can thus be attributed to the high effort directed at $L$. amia in this province, especially in the Greater Durban region. Nevertheless, when considering the spatial variations in fishing effort along the South African coast, it does not fully reflect the pattern of tagging and recapture seen for $L$. amia in the Cape.

Although fishing effort directed at $L$. amia in the Cape was lower than in KZN, far more L. amia were tagged and recaptured than in KZN (Table 3.2). Thus, fishing effort directed at $L$. amia in the Cape must be higher than that found in this study. Alternatively, this may be a reflection of the state of the adult population in comparison to juveniles, i.e. a smaller adult population would result in higher recaptures and a shorter time at liberty as shown in Table 3.4. By identifying individual taggers in the ORI/WWF-SA Tagging Project, who focus on tagging L. amia, greater clarity was obtained in explaining the pattern of tagging and recapture along the South African coast. Several taggers identified in the project (e.g. B. Sparg, C. Lillford, G. Pope, C. Schoultz, B. Carr and A. Kruger) target juvenile L. amia almost exclusively in Eastern and Southern Cape estuaries (e.g. in the Gouritz, Goukamma and Knysna estuaries). These individuals target juvenile L. amia, and in so doing increase the number of fish tagged and recaptured in these regions (E. Bullen, ORI, pers. comm.). This in turn explains the dominance of juveniles in the length frequency of tagged and recaptured L. amia in the Cape (Figure 3.5). Consequently, years with exceptionally high numbers of L. amia tagged and recaptured in the Eastern Cape could coincide with the introduction of such a avid tagger to the tagging project.

However, increased fishing effort is not the only variable that can affect tag-recapture trends. The success of the taggers targeting juvenile L. amia in Cape estuaries will vary depending on environmental factors. The variable recruitment of juveniles into the Cape estuaries, undoubtedly has an impact on the catches in subsequent years. This recruitment is dependent on factors such as rainfall and wave action, both of which contribute to opening mouths of and deepening channels into estuaries (Marais, 1982; Smale and Kok, 1983; Bennett et al., 1985; Whitfield and Kok, 1992). The success rate of reproduction by L. amia is dependent on the number of surviving adult fish, and juvenile survival is in turn, dependent on the abundance of suitable habitat and prey.

With this large potential variation in annual recruitment, the consistency of the tag-recapture rates over the last two decades warrants some explanation. Although trends in CPUE and catches of $L$. amia decreased over the same period (Chapter 2), the popularity of L. amia as a game fish and increasing effort directed at $L$. amia by taggers each year (with the annual increase in the number of taggers in the project) has ensured a relatively consistent tagging and recapture of L. amia.

The life-history characteristics of L. amia explain the seasonal abundance in the different provinces along the South African coast. Trends in the number of L. amia tagged and recaptured per province result from the seasonal migration of sub-adult and adult $L$. amia, and the resident behaviour of juveniles (Day et al., 1981; van der Elst, 1988). Sub-adult and adult L. amia (>500 mm FL) were shown to migrate from the Cape to KZN in early winter months (April-June), where they are available to anglers in KZN up until October-November, after which a return migration back to the Cape occurs. These migrating L. amia were shown to be capable of undertaking large migrations in a year (max 1443 km ) at relatively high speed (max $13.38 \mathrm{~km} /$ day). No difference in swimming speed was detected between northerly and southerly migrations ( $4.14 \mathrm{~km} /$ day north and 5.75 $\mathrm{km} /$ day south). The seasonal migration often in association with prey species Sardinops sagax (sardines) and Pomatomus saltatrix (elf/shad). In fact, Govender (1995a) showed P. saltatrix to migrate at a very similar speed to that found for L. amia in this study. While tagging of L. amia still occurred in KZN during November, other fish had already been recaptured in the Cape in October after having been initially tagged in early winter in KZN (April-June). This indicates migration is asynchronous, as proposed by Smale (1983). The relatively high number of tagged and recaptured fish in the Eastern Cape during winter (April-September) was a result of taggers targeting resident juvenile $L$. amia (in estuaries) that had not joined the migrating adult population.

Seasonal migration appears to be largely spawning related with mature L. amia ( $>800 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{FL}$ ) making up a large proportion ( $46 \%$ ) of fish that migrated to KZN. Spawning occurs off the Tugela region of the KZN coast from September through to November (van der Elst et al., 1993). However, non-spawning related migrations of immature $L$. amia between 500 and 800 mm FL occurred with $54 \%$ of migrating fish in this size class. These migrations may be related to an increase in optimum habitat availability with decreasing water temperatures in KZN during winter, and/or a feeding related migration (following P. saltatrix and S. sagax) (Harden Jones, 1968). It is also possible that van der Elst et al. (1993) over-estimated the size at maturity of L. amia, and many of the fish between $500-800 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL may well have been mature. Potts et al. (2008) found that $L$. amia in southern Angola mature at 623 mm FL, but determination of size at maturity was beyond the scope of this study.

Larger L. amia ( $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL) were found to have shorter times at liberty than juvenile fish (Table 3.4). The seasonal migration of these larger L. amia to KZN from the Cape is one of the contributing factors for the shorter time at liberty, as fishing effort directed at $L$. amia is higher in

KZN than in the Cape, and thus a higher recapture and fishing mortality rate would be expected. Similarly, Gillanders et al. (2001) found differences in recovery rate with size, i.e. recapture of larger fish was more likely. Gillanders et al. (2001) attributed this to minimum legal size limits (as fish retained illegally are often not reported, selectivity of fishing gear and different rates of tagassociated mortality. The difference in recovery rates with size in this study can be attributed to similar reasons. Larger stronger fish, which are easier to tag, swim off more strongly and are less prone to predation once released, thus reducing tag-associated mortality and increasing the chances of recapture after a short time at liberty. Larger fish would also out-compete smaller fish for available prey, further increasing the chance of recapture. The decreasing days at liberty could (Table 3.4) also be an indication of a smaller overall population of mature L. amia (as mentioned above). Low abundance of mature fish would result in the high recapture rates (10.73\%) with short periods at liberty, as high proportions of tagged fish in the whole population would increase the chances of fish recapture. In a relatively pristine L. amia population, such as that off southern Angola (Potts et al., 2008), the recapture rate was approximately 5\% (W. Potts, Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, Rhodes University, pers. comm.). Smaller L. amia also have higher rates of natural mortality and tag-associated mortality, which would decrease the recapture rate of smaller fish (as discussed below).

When attempting to quantify the movement behaviour of L. amia by means of Hilborn's (1990) general movement model, the expected results were not obtained. The model-predicted probability of movement from KZN to the Cape $\left(p_{n, c}\right)$ was much higher than from the Cape to $\mathrm{KZN}\left(p_{c, n}\right)$. However, there was a high tag to low recapture ratio in the Cape in comparison to KZN (Table 3.2), indicating that far more tagged $L$. amia moved north from the Cape to KZN than from KZN to the Cape, as seen in Table 3.3 and Figures 3.9-3.11. Running the movement model with all the tagrecapture data unfortunately meant the data were size-biased because of the overwhelming amount of data for juveniles tagged in the Cape (Figure 3.5). The model thus fitted the Cape data better than the KZN data and unrealistic parameter estimates were obtained (in particular $p_{n, c}$ and $p_{c, n}$ ). The parameter estimates were further biased without incorporating accurate estimates for tag-shedding, tag-associated mortality and non-reporting of tags (Sibert, 1984; Gillanders et al., 2001; Shirakihara and Kitada, 2004; McDermott et al., 2005), which vary over space and time as a fishery changes (Trumble et al., 1990) and between anglers (Hearn et al., 1991; Govender and Bullen, 1999; Gillanders et al, 2001). As proposed in Hilborn's (1990) study on fish movement patterns, the probability of movement of $L$. amia was shown to be confounded with $M$ (Table 3.6) and thus also
with tag-shedding and tag-associated mortality. Therefore, varying rates of either tag-shedding and/or tag-associated mortality (which are summed with $M$ in Eq. 3.1) would result in different estimates of $p_{n, c}$ and $p_{c, n}$.

In the Cape, the majority of L. amia tagged were juvenile fish, while those tagged in KZN were sub-adult and adult fish. The smaller juvenile fish tagged in the Cape would have higher $M$ values than the larger sub-adult and adult fish tagged in KZN (Ricker, 1969; Wang and Liu, 2006). These juveniles are also more susceptible to tag-associated mortality, with recent work on mortality rates of released fish suggesting that relatively high proportions of released fish do not survive (Bartholomew and Bohnsack, 2005). High natural mortality and tag-associated mortality of juveniles in the Cape could have contributed to the low recapture rate in the Cape in comparison to in KZN. Without incorporating different values of natural mortality for the different areas in the model, and with the probability of movement confounded with $M$, a higher $M$ in the Cape would have thus resulted in a higher $p_{c, n}$ estimate than obtained.

The catchability coefficients estimated by the model ( $q_{n}$ and $q_{c}$ ) were high, as low fishing effort directed at L. amia produced relatively large catches. However, limited effort data meant that the effort parameter $\left(E_{c, t}\right)$ was fixed for the Cape, and thus the effort data were inadequate for quantifying movement rates of $L$. amia and $q_{c}$ would be meaningless (Xiao, 1996; Aires-da-Silva et al., 2005). The low fishing effort directed at L. amia in the Cape and KZN (although higher in KZN) further resulted in exceptionally low values of fishing mortality when running the model with all the tag-recapture data. Beverton and Holt (1957) point out that without estimates of the tagshedding rate, tag-associated mortality rate and non-reporting, $F$ would be underestimated, because these factors generally contribute to a reduced recapture rate. Consequently, the estimated values of $F\left(\mathrm{KZN}=0.09\right.$ year $^{-1}$ and Cape $=0.03$ year $\left.^{-1}\right)$ obtained in this study were unrealistic as they indicate an almost un-fished L. amia fishery along the South African coast. Potts et al. (2008) estimated fishing mortality at 0.03 year $^{-1}$ for $L$. amia in southern Angola, which is largely un-fished and has a relatively pristine population.

Since small fish (<587 mm FL) were shown to be predominantly resident, the model was re-run using fish $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL. This effectively removed the bias resulting from the dominance of small fish tagged in the Cape. The legal size limit for L. amia is 587 mm FL and fish this size and above undertake large migrations (Figure 3.6). This effectively "down-weighted" the Cape data by
excluding the large number of juveniles tagged in the Cape. As with the entire data set, considerably more L. amia $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL were tagged in the Cape than in KZN (four times as many) and the model once again provided a better fit to the Cape data than the KZN data (Table 3.9). However, in contrast with that found when running the model with all the tag-recapture data, the model indicated there was a higher probability of fish moving from the Cape to KZN when using only the L. amia that were tagged $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL (Table 3.8). This would be expected based on the high tag to low recapture ratio for the Cape in comparison to KZN (Table 3.2), and the much higher number of tagged $L$. amia that moved north from the Cape to KZN than south from KZN to the Cape (Table 3.3). Although mortality estimates were again unrealistically low ( 0.03 year $^{-1}$ in the Cape and 0.19 year ${ }^{-1}$ in KZN), using only $L$. amia that were tagged $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL resulted in a better overall fit and the estimates are probably a better reflection of the actual state of the fishery. Nevertheless, parameter estimates would still have been biased without reliable estimates for tag-shedding, tagassociated mortality and non-reporting of tags.

Although tag-shedding and tag-associated mortality do occur, negligible tag-shedding has been observed in the field, with only one L. amia out of 90 recaptured off the Angolan coast having had a tag scar (W. Potts, Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Sciences Rhodes University, pers. comm.). Although this is only anecdotal information, one would expect tag-shedding and associated mortality to be relatively low for $L$. amia. Captive tagging with dart tags was shown to have no affect on a similar size Carangid species (Caranx melampygus), i.e. all behaved normally, none died and there was no tag-shedding over an extended observation period (Holland et al., 1996). In addition, tags do not appear to affect the growth of L. amia (Chapter 4). McFarlane et al. (1990) considered tag-shedding and tag-associated mortality the most critical issue when evaluating results from tagging experiments, and determining rates of each are necessary to obtain unbiased estimates of migration rates (Shirakihara and Kitada, 2004). Nonetheless, they are difficult to calculate (Hearn et al., 1991), as they are confounded with fishing mortality, natural mortality and movement (Hilborn, 1990). Estimates can be obtained from experimental work with fish kept in captivity and/or double-tagging experiments. However, the ORI/WWF-SA Tagging Project is a cooperative tagging project, and as a result, tag-shedding and tag-associated mortality rates vary per tagger with experienced taggers having lower tag-shedding and tag-associated mortality rates (Hearn et al., 1991; Govender and Bullen, 1999). Thus, it would be difficult to produce reliable estimates of tagshedding and tag-associated mortality by means of double tagging unless done under controlled conditions. Furthermore, whether tag-shedding and associated mortality observed in captivity
reflects actual field conditions cannot be determined (Gillanders et al., 2001). The current methodology of the tagging project therefore restricts methods for estimating values for tagshedding and associated mortality.

Limitations in the data because of the unequal distribution of tagging effort along the South African coast and the lack of quantified information on variables that affect recapture rates, limit the usefulness of the tag-recapture data obtained from the ORI/WWF-SA Tagging Project. The unrealistic parameter estimates obtained from the movement model in this study are not surprising as, according to Gillanders et al. (2001), cooperative tagging projects such as the ORI/WWF-SA Tagging Project are unlikely to provide useful information for estimating important life-history parameters, such as mortality. According to Hilborn (1990) and Xiao (1996), good experimental design needs tagging and release to be done over as wide an area as possible and requires fishing effort data to be available by time for the same area. Thus, in order for the information content of the data from the project to be improved and be useful for more quantitative analyses, tag supply could be limited to different areas along the South African coast to avoid the unequal distribution of tagging effort (Kohler and Turner, 2001). If possible tagging cards should include some kind of information on effort, e.g. time fished, species targeted and even gear type used. Furthermore, in the future, more emphasis should be put on encouraging the reporting of tags, e.g. through better communication with anglers and clubs.

Although requiring huge resources, future research on population dynamics, mortality and migration rates of $L$. amia should be based on a combination of tag-recapture data collected from a dedicated scientific tagging project and the existing cooperative tagging project. A dedicated scientific tagging project would provide more realistic, accurate results and will offer the possibility of better prediction of life-history parameters, but on its own cannot provide the geographical range and numbers of fish a cooperative project can (Gillanders et al., 2001). A dedicated tagging project would need to focus on factors such as non-reporting of tags, tag-shedding and tag-associated mortality together with spatial and temporal distribution of effort, and the abundance and distribution of L. amia along the South African coast (Gillanders et al., 2001). A framework, such as that proposed by Xiao (1996), when designing such a project should be considered as it can be used to evaluate a set of experimental designs for a dedicated tagging project and provide a basis for collecting sufficient data to estimate rates of movement accurately. Telemetry experiments could also be explored for more accurate estimates of movement, mortality and tag-shedding.

These results have provided evidence for an ontogenetic shift in the movement behaviour of $L$. amia. Based on this, management options could be explored on a provincial basis. The heavy targeting of juveniles in the Cape has been highlighted in this study. Appropriate management should ensure these juveniles join the adult spawning population by ensuring adequate protection in their estuarine nursery areas. Although theoretically the minimum size limit should achieve this, it is apparent that estuarine degradation has led to reduced habitat availability for juvenile L. amia (Whitfield, 1997; Lamberth and Turpie, 2003). What is also of concern is that although juveniles are targeted with the intention of tagging and release, Bartholomew and Bohnsack (2005) have suggested relatively high proportions of released fish do not survive. For these reasons, greater emphasis should be placed on habitat protection and the development of estuarine protected areas (EPAs) in the Eastern and Western Cape.

In addition to more juveniles tagged in the Cape, a large number of sub-adult and adult L. amia ( $\geq 587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL) were also tagged in the Cape (four times as many as in KZN). These fish migrate up to KZN, where there was a high number of recaptures and considerably fewer fish tagged than in the Cape. This, as well as the very short time at liberty (Table 3.4) and lower probability of movement out of KZN for these larger fish (Table 3.8) serves as an indication of the high catchability of $L$. amia and the high fishing effort directed at this species while in KZN waters. These larger fish are available to anglers in KZN waters for seven months of the year, during which time mature fish spawn from September-November. Management attention should thus be focused on those months during which spawning L. amia are present in KZN and are exposed to high fishing effort. Management considerations incorporating the protection of juvenile L. amia in Cape estuaries and larger fish in KZN waters are explored in Chapter 6.

## CHAPTER 4

## Age and Growth

### 4.1 Introduction

Studying the age of fish is an important step in establishing a number of important life history parameters such as growth rate, mortality, longevity and age at maturity (Mann, 1992). The knowledge of age of a fish population is one of the most important issues in stock assessment and management (Bermejo, 2007). The age of fish can be determined using a number of techniques, for example, tag-recapture techniques and measuring change in the modal length of a population over time. However, traditionally fish have been aged by counting seasonally deposited opaque and hyaline (translucent) bands in calcified tissue or structures of fish such as bones, scales or otoliths (Blacker, 1974; Beamish and McFarlane, 1987; Campana, 2001; Bermejo et al., 2007).

Otoliths, which are commonly used to age fish, are found in the inner ear of fish and function as part of the auditory and balance systems (Fay and Popper, 2000; Murayama et al., 2005). Bands in otoliths form through the differential deposition of calcium carbonate (aragonite) and protein (otolin) during alternating periods of growth (Lang and Buxton, 1993). Narrow opaque bands form in periods of slow or no growth and wider hyaline bands in periods of fast growth (Tesch, 1971). Fish are aged by counting these seasonally deposited opaque or hyaline bands under the assumption that the rate of band deposition, is known or can be validated (Govender, 1995a). Methods of band deposition validation can either be indirect, such as marginal zone analysis (Manooch, 1982), or direct, such as chemical labelling of otoliths (Lang and Buxton, 1993; Campana, 1999; Campana 2001).

While fish can illustrate complex growth, it has been possible to derive growth equations that adequately represent the overall growth patterns of fish (Iles, 1974). Growth rates for fish populations are usually determined from length-at-age data and/or by means of length increment data derived from tag-recapture experiments (Francis, 1988a). It is therefore a common requirement for stock assessment of a fish species to estimate growth parameters using length-at-age or tagrecapture data (Mulligan and Leaman, 1992). More importantly, growth rates for fish populations can provide an indication of, and influence, the sustainable catch of a fish stock (King, 1995,

Fennessy, 2000). Faster-growing fish not only mature, reproduce and die earlier (Fennessy, 2000), but those which reach a larger size earlier are able to produce more and larger eggs, thus increasing the chances of larval survival (King, 1995). Faster-growing fish can therefore withstand greater harvesting pressures than slow-growing fish.

While van der Elst et al. (1993) and Potts et al. (2008) have previously modelled the growth of Lichia amia based on length-at-age data, there is little published information on the age and growth of L. amia using tag-recapture data. In the studies done by van der Elst et al. (1993) and Potts et al. (2008), no method was employed to validate the deposition of the growth zones in L. amia otoliths. Furthermore, the growth parameters determined by Potts et al. (2008) were calculated from L. amia caught in southern Angolan waters. In this chapter, the age and growth of L. amia off the coast of South Africa is determined, through both the assessment and validation of growth rings in whole $L$. amia otoliths and through the analysis of tag-recapture and length frequency data. The growth parameter estimates determined in this chapter will be used in the following chapter to undertake a per-recruit stock assessment of L. amia.

### 4.2 Materials and methods

## General sampling

Researchers at the ORI have undertaken biological sampling of L. amia along the South African coastline (primarily in KZN) since 1978. The majority of the samples were collected randomly from recreational catches, which included shore, skiboat and spearfishing competitions. In addition, sampling for juvenile L. amia using gill nets took place in estuaries mainly in the Eastern Cape (Swartkops River, Sundays River, Kowie River and Krom River) and to a lesser degree in the Western Cape (Goukamma). In 1992, the ORI utilised some of these data for the preliminary investigation into the age, growth and stock status of L. amia (van der Elst et al., 1993). However, ad hoc sampling was continued after 1992 and the entire data set collected by the ORI including lengths, sex, maturity state and whole L. amia otoliths were used for this study. Biological sampling of L. amia was thus done on an irregular, opportunistic basis from 1978-2007.

Biological sampling of $L$. amia included measuring the total (TL), fork (FL) and maxillary lengths (ML) of each fish in millimetres ( mm ) and the total body weight $(\mathrm{Wt})$ of each individual in grams (g). The ML (the length from the tip of the snout to the posterior part of the maxilla) was measured in those cases when only the fish's head was obtained. The ML/FL and TL/FL relationships were expressed by linear regression. The FL/Wt relationship was expressed by the power relationship:

$$
\begin{equation*}
W t(g)=a F L(\mathrm{~mm})^{b} \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $a$ is a scaling constant and $b$ is the allometric growth parameter.

## Processing and reading otoliths

Sagittal otoliths were removed from the auditory bullae of the L. amia sampled, dried with a paper towel and stored dry in gelatine capsules for protection. The capsules were then placed in paper envelopes on which the relevant biological information and sample number were recorded. As $L$. amia otoliths are extremely thin and difficult to section, otoliths were read whole. Using a dissecting microscope and reflected light, the number of opaque bands were counted from the nucleus to the outer margin of the otolith, with one annulus consisting of a wide hyaline zone and a narrow opaque zone. In order to enhance the optical clarity of growth zones, otoliths were submerged in glycerine in a petri dish and observed against a black background. The otoliths were read three times by two readers: reader 1 read the otoliths twice $\left(\mathrm{R}_{1+2}\right)$ using a magnification of $\sim 15 x$, and the third reading $\left(\mathrm{R}_{3}\right)$ was done simultaneously by reader 1 and a more experienced reader (reader 2) using a stereo dissecting microscope connected to a computer screen. When conducting the third reading if no consensus was reached between reader 1 and 2 on the number of growth rings, the otolith was rejected. In order to avoid inconsistency when determining the position of the first opaque band, measurements were taken when the first opaque band was clearly visible and used as a guideline when viewing otoliths that had less well-defined growth zones. Otoliths were read at least two weeks apart with no reference to the previous readings and without knowledge of the length or weight of the fish. If age estimates did not coincide with the first two readings, the age from the third reading $\left(\mathrm{R}_{3}\right)$ was taken as the final age as this was considered to be the most accurate (both readers using a higher resolution screen).

In order to assess the ageing bias between readers for the different otolith readings, an age-bias plot was used (Campana et al., 1995; Francis et al., 1999; Campana, 2001). In this plot, the two age readings assigned by reader $1\left(\mathrm{R}_{1+2}\right)$ were presented as the mean age with $95 \%$ confidence interval (CI) corresponding to each of the age categories reported by reading 1 and 2 from the third reading $\left(R_{3}\right)$. As $\mathrm{R}_{3}$ was assigned by both readers, and considered more accurate, it was selected as the baseline against which to compare the age estimates from $\mathrm{R}_{1+2}$. Furthermore, the average percent error (APE), co-efficient of variance (CV) and index of precision (D) were calculated to evaluate the precision of the three sets of age readings (Beamish and Fournier, 1981; Chang, 1982; Campana et al., 1995). The APE and CV test the reproducibility of age estimates for a particular fish species, whereas the index of precision estimates the percent error contributed by each observation to the average age-class (Chang, 1982).

## Validation

## Indirect method

Marginal zone analysis (MZA) was used to indirectly validate the annual periodicity of growth zone deposition (Hecht and Smale, 1986). By noting whether the growth zone on the margin of each otolith was either opaque or hyaline, the frequency of each margin was plotted to determine seasonality of zone deposition (Hecht and Smale, 1986). This was done by taking into account that one growth zone was considered to represent a calendar year of deposition.

## Direct method

Oxytetracycline (OTC), a chemical label, has been extensively used to determine the periodicity of growth zone deposition in fish (Lang and Buxton, 1993; Campana, 2001; Ewing et al., 2007). OTC is incorporated at all sites of calcification in hard structures and thus provides a reference point from which ensuing growth can be determined (Lang and Buxton, 1993). From 2000-2006, a number of L. amia ( $n=34$ ) were measured, weighed and injected intramuscularly with the recommended dosage for fish in the wild ( $100 \mathrm{mg} . \mathrm{kg}^{-1}$, Lang and Buxton, 1993) and subsequently tagged and released with orange dart tags (Hallprint). Two $L$. amia which were injected with OTC on the $8^{\text {th }}$ June 2000 and $11^{\text {th }}$ June 2001 were recaptured by recreational anglers on the $2^{\text {nd }}$ August 2000 and
$9^{\text {th }}$ October 2002 respectively ( 55 and 485 days at liberty respectively). The length (mm FL) and weight (g) were recorded and the otoliths removed, dried and stored in plastic capsules ensuring minimum exposure to natural light that breaks down the OTC mark. Otoliths were than viewed under reflected ultraviolet light and the position of the fluorescent OTC mark was marked on the otolith. The same otolith was then viewed under normal reflected light to determine the number of opaque and hyaline bands deposited distal to the OTC mark.

## Growth model

As the von Bertalanffy growth equation is generally regarded as the most suitable for expressing growth of fishes (Hilborn and Walters, 1992; King, 1995; Haddon, 2001), it was fitted to the observed length-at-age data using the special form of the equation:

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{t}=L_{\infty}\left(1-e^{-K\left[t-t_{0}\right]}\right) \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where: $L_{t}=$ mean length at age $\mathrm{t}(\mathrm{mm} \mathrm{FL})$,
$L_{\infty}=$ asymptotic or theoretical maximum body size ( mm FL),
$K=$ growth rate parameter,
$t_{0}=$ theoretical age at zero length - usually negative (years),
$t=$ age of fish (years).

When utilizing the special von Bertalanffy equation, $L_{\infty}$ is interpreted as the average length at the maximum age and the resultant curve represents the average growth of the fish in the population when fitted using the least-squares routine (Haddon, 2001).

Absolute and relative error models associated with the length-at-age data were tested. The residual difference between the observed data and expected data from the fitted curve (i.e. test for homeoscedasticity) and the runs test were used to determine goodness of fit. Standard errors (SE) of the estimates of the parameters from the growth model were evaluated by 1000 bootstrap iterations at $90 \%$ CI. The above analysis was undertaken using a spreadsheet and Microsoft Excel 2007 (Prof T. Booth, Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, Rhodes University). Due to insufficient data, the growth curve was not differentiated between males and females.

In addition, the expected mean body weights were plotted against age. This was done using all available lengths (mm FL) and weights (g), and the von Bertalanffy growth equation for body weight:

$$
\begin{equation*}
W_{t}=W_{\infty}\left(1-e^{-K\left[t-t_{0}\right]}\right)^{b} \tag{4.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $W_{\infty}$ is the asymptotic maximum expected weight and $b$ the allometric growth parameter. This model was fitted using a spreadsheet and minimisation of sums-of-squares routine.

## Tag-recapture data

Tag-recapture data for $L$. amia were obtained from the ORI/WWF-SA Tagging Project. The relevant methodology undertaken in the ORI/WWF-SA Tagging Project is described in Chapter 3. The data used in the analyses were derived from those $L$. amia which were tagged and recaptured with recorded lengths that could be verified (Chapter 3). Information from recaptured fish that had no recorded length or indication of which type of length measurement was taken (i.e. TL or FL) were discarded. In addition, the measurements of fish from which negative growth was established were assumed to be inaccurate and discarded. With the remaining tag-recapture data, measurement error was estimated using fish recaptured within thirty days of release (Gillanders et al., 2001). Assuming no measureable growth occurred during this period, length-at-recapture should equal length-at-release. The Gulland and Holt (1959) and Fabens (1965) models where then used to generate von Bertalanffy growth functions from the tag-recapture data. Although length-at-age and tag-recapture data are strictly not comparable (Francis, 1988a), when interpreting the differences in annual growth between the data types, the method described by Attwood and Swart (2000) was used after considering the recommendations of Francis (1988a and 1995).

Gulland and Holts' (1959) model allows preliminary estimates of the von Bertalanffy parameters $L_{\infty}$ and $K$ from growth increments (tag-recapture data) and is based on growth rate declining linearly with length reaching zero at $L_{\infty}$ under the von Bertalanffy growth function. Growth in mm per year was determined as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
d F L / d t=a+b \cdot \overline{F L} \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where: $d F L=F L_{\text {rec }}-F L_{\text {rel }}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d t=t_{r e c}-t_{r e l} \\
& \overline{F L}=\left(F L_{r e c}+F L_{r e l}\right) / 2
\end{aligned}
$$

When $t$ equals one year, $d F L / d t$ is the growth per year (mm). $F L_{r e l}$ is the length at release (mm), $F L_{\text {rec }}$ is the length at recapture ( mm ), with $t_{\text {rel }}$ and $t_{\text {rec }}$ the corresponding dates, and $\overline{F L}$ the mean of the release and recapture lengths. By plotting the growth per year of individual fish at liberty for $\geq 1$ year (dt $\geq 365$ days) (Natanson et al., 1999; Natanson et al., 2006) against the $\overline{F L}$, the von Bertalanffy growth parameters were estimated from the linear regression as $L_{\infty}=-a / b$ (value at $x$ intercept where $y=0$ ) and $K=-b$ (slope).

In order to make the von Bertalanffy curve suitable for use with tag-recapture data, Fabens (1965) re-formulated the von Bertalanffy curve in terms of size increments after a given time from a given initial length (Haddon, 2001):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta L=\left(L_{\infty}-L_{t}\right)\left(1-e^{-K \Delta t}\right) \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Delta t$ is the change in time, $L_{t}$ length at time $t$ and $\Delta L$ the change in length. However, on a residual plot the variability of the residuals increase as $\Delta L$ increases with initial size $\left(L_{t}\right)$. Thus, when fitting Fabens' (1965) model, a weighted least squares approach or a maximum likelihood method that directly estimates the variance, is required (Haddon, 2001). Francis (1988b) described such a maximum likelihood approach (assuming the residuals are normally distributed) with a number of different functional forms used to describe the relationship between residual variance and expected $\Delta L$. In order to obtain the best possible fit of Fabens' (1965) model, three different functional forms suggested by Francis (1988b) were simulated. These were:

1. an inverse linear relationship between deviation and the expected $\Delta L$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma=v(\Delta \hat{L}) \tag{4.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

2. a lognormal standard deviation:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma=\tau\left(1-e^{-v \Delta \hat{L}}\right) \tag{4.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

3. residual standard deviation which followed a power law:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma=v \Delta \hat{L}^{\tau} \tag{4.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $v$ and $\tau$ are constant parameters which are estimated, and $\sigma$ is the standard deviation. For each error structure, the Fabens' (1965) model was fitted using a spreadsheet and by minimizing the negative log-likelihood (Haddon, 2001):

$$
\begin{equation*}
L(\Delta L \mid \text { Data })=\sum_{i}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi \sigma}} e^{\frac{(\Delta L-\overparen{L})^{2}}{2 \sigma^{2}}}\right) \tag{4.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

For each of the different functional forms suggested by Francis (1988b) for the relationship between residual variance and expected $\Delta L$, the best fit of the model was determined by using Akaike's (1973) information criterion (i.e. $A I C=2 L L+2 p$, where $p=$ number of parameters).

In Fabens' (1965) method, $t_{0}$ is redundant and was therefore calculated by solving for $t_{0}$ (Eq. 4.2) using $L_{t}=5.7 \mathrm{~mm}$ TL, which is the length at birth (Connell, 2007), $t=0$ and the different values of $L_{\infty}$ and $K$ determined through each method (Gulland and Holt, 1959; Fabens, 1965). This allowed for von Bertalanffy growth curves to be plotted with the growth parameters ( $L_{\infty}$ and $K$ ) estimated using the tag-recapture data and other methods.

The von Bertalanffy parameters estimated using the tag-recapture and length-at-age data are not directly comparable (Francis, 1988a). In essence, the parameters estimated from the two data types have different meanings. In particular $L_{\infty}$, which is the asymptotic mean length-at-age from length-at-age data, but is the maximum length for tag-recapture data. Furthermore, $L_{t}$ in Eq. 4.2 is the expected length, but in Eq. 4.5 is the observed length, differences in meaning which are often ignored (Francis, 1988a). These differences result in Eq. 4.2 and 4.5 being different models and not simply different formulations of the same model (Francis, 1988a). Francis (1988a), however,
recommended re-parameterisation of the von Bertalanffy equation and outlined methods for comparing growth rates determined from the different data types. Francis (1995) makes further recommendations in interpreting differences between growth rates with tag-recapture and length-atage data when employing Schnute's (1981) growth model to estimate growth parameters from the length-at-age data. In this study, the special form of the von Bertalanffy equation was used and in order to compare the rates of growth from the length-at-age and tag-recapture data, the method described by Attwood and Swart (2000) was applied, which is similar to that in Francis (1995). Using this method, the annual growth rates of the individual tagged L. amia were calculated using the following equation:

$$
\begin{equation*}
G_{i}=365\left(\frac{F L_{i r e c}-F L_{i \text { rel }}}{d t}\right) \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

where: $G_{i}=$ growth rate of individual L. amia $\left(\mathrm{mm}^{2}\right.$ year $\left.^{-1}\right)$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& F L_{i r e l}=\text { length }(\mathrm{mm} \text { FL }) \text { at release, } \\
& F L_{i r e c}=\text { length }(\mathrm{mm} \text { FL }) \text { at recapture, } \\
& d t=\text { days at liberty. }
\end{aligned}
$$

For this analysis only fish that had been at liberty for $>1$ year $(d t \geq 365)$ were included. This reduced the effect of measurement error (by avoiding those fish that had negative growth) and the chance of bias caused by seasonal growth variations. $G_{i}$ values were then plotted against the FL (mm) of individual $L$. amia midway during their time at liberty (Attwood and Swart, 2000). The length midway between release and recapture was estimated as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\overline{F L_{i}}=L_{\infty}-\exp \frac{\ln \left(L_{\infty}-F L_{i r e l}\right)+\ln \left(L_{\infty}-F L_{i r e c}\right)}{2} \tag{4.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

The estimated $L_{\infty}$ from the tag-recapture data (Fabens, 1965) was then used when applying Eq. 4.11 to the increment data. In order to compare the growth rates $\left(G_{i}\right)$ determined by the tag-recapture data model and the length-at-age data, the von Bertalanffy growth model was transformed to (Attwood and Swart, 2000):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d F L}{d t}=L_{\infty} \times K\left(1-\frac{F L}{L_{\infty}}\right) \tag{4.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $L_{\infty}$ and $K$ were taken from the length-at-age data. The $G_{i}$ and $d F L d t$ values were then compared graphically. A two-tailed, paired $t$-test with critical values selected at $95 \%$ CI tested the null hypothesis $\left(H_{o}\right)$ that the estimated annual growth rate determined from the tag-recapture data is no different to the predicted growth rate determined from the length-at-age data. Similar to Gulland and Holts' (1959) model, when plotting the linear regression of the $G_{i}$ and $d F L / d t$ values, the von Bertalanffy growth parameters were estimated as $L_{\infty}=-a l b$ (value at $x$-intercept where $y=0$ ) and $K$ $=-b$ (slope). The best von Bertalanffy growth parameter estimates from the tag-recapture data, determined using Gulland and Holt's (1959) and Fabens' (1965) methods, where then inputted into Eq. 4.12 and plotted as well.

## Length frequency analysis

In addition to determining age and growth using otoliths and tag-recapture data, length frequency analysis using ELEFAN I (Pauly and David, 1981; Pauly, 1990), in the FiSAT II stock assessment package (Gayanilo et al., 2005), was conducted to provide a third method to determine von Bertalanffy growth parameters ( $L_{\infty}$ and $K$ ). A $K$-scan routine was conducted to assess a reliable estimate of $K$ (Gayanilo et al., 2005; Al-Barwani et al., 2007). Using the $L_{\infty}$ and $K$ estimates from these techniques, the growth performance index $\varnothing$ कas calculated (Pauly and Munro, 1984):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\grave{\varnothing}=\log _{10}(K)+2 \cdot \log _{10}\left(L_{\infty}\right) \tag{4.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

These analyses were undertaken using length frequency data obtained from L. amia caught in the Kleinemonde Estuary from April 1993 to June 2002 (Dr P. Cowley, SAIAB, unpublished data). This data set forms part of an ongoing monitoring program of the fish of the East Kleinemonde Estuary (Cowley and Whitfield, 2002; James et al., 2007). All of the L. amia caught in the Kleinemonde estuary were measured using standard length (SL). To obtain the FL (mm) for comparative purposes the FL/SL relationship from Marais and Baird (1980) was used:

$$
\begin{equation*}
F L(\mathrm{~mm})=0.785+1.047 S L(\mathrm{~mm}) \tag{4.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Once the von Bertalanffy parameters were estimated from the length-at-age data (Eq. 4.2), the growth performance index (Eq. 4.13) was re-calculated using the $L_{\infty}$ and $K$ values obtained. The $K$ -
scan routine was then re-run with the length frequency data (as described above) and using the $L_{\infty}$ estimate obtained from the length-at-age data. This allowed for validity and reliability of the growth parameters from the length-at-age data to be tested.

### 4.3 Results

A total of 231 L. amia were sampled along the South African coast between 1978 and 2007, with the majority sampled along the KZN coast, $n=123$ or $53 \%$ (Table 4.1). The remainder of the $L$. amia were sampled along the Eastern and Western Cape coasts ( $35 \%$ and $8 \%$ respectively).

Table 4.1: Number of Lichia amia sampled along the South African coast (1978-2007).

| Region |  | No. L. amia |
| :---: | :--- | :---: |
| KZN | Maputaland | 2 |
|  | Zululand | 13 |
|  | Greater DBN | 104 |
|  | South Coast | 4 |
| CAPE | Eastern Cape | 80 |
|  | Western Cape | 19 |
| Unknown |  | 9 |
| Total |  | $\mathbf{2 3 1}$ |

The equations describing the length-length and length-mass relationships for $L$. amia obtained from this study are summarised in Table 4.2 with the corresponding graphs in Figure 4.1. Van der Elst (1988) previously expressed the length-mass relationship for larger L. amia in KZN waters as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
W t(g)=7.286 \times 10^{-5} F L(\mathrm{~mm})^{2.725} \tag{4.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Marais and Baird (1980) expressed this relationship for smaller L. amia in the South-eastern Cape as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
W t(g)=1.132 \times 10^{-5} F L(\mathrm{~mm})^{3.015} \tag{4.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

When compared to the equations from van der Elst (1988) and Marais and Baird (1980), the equation calculated in this study describing the FL/Wt relationship (Table 4.2) was preferred. This was due to the larger sample size in this study $(n=95)$ than in the study by Marais and Baird (1980) $(n=50)$ and because the range in sample sizes was greater in this study than in van der Elst (1988) (based on larger fish in KZN) and Marais and Baird (1980) (based on smaller fish in the Cape).

Table 4.2: The relationships between total and fork length, maxillary and fork length, and weight and fork length for the Lichia amia sampled along the South African coast between 1978 and 2007.

| Equation | $\boldsymbol{r}^{2}$ | $\boldsymbol{n}$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $T L(\mathrm{~mm})=1.204 F L(\mathrm{~mm})-6.762$ | 0.996 | 77 |
| $M L(\mathrm{~mm})=0.102 F L(\mathrm{~mm})+7.496$ | 0.979 | 96 |
| $W t(g)=1.124 \times 10^{-5} F L(\mathrm{~mm})^{3.015}$ | 0.988 | 95 |



Figure 4.1: The relationship between total and fork length (a), maxillary and fork length (b), and weight and fork length (c) with corresponding equations.

The length and weight frequencies of the 231 L . amia sampled are illustrated in Figures 4.2 a and b respectively. The L. amia sampled ranged in length from 82 to 1135 mm FL and the heaviest fish sampled weighed 20.5 kg ( 1060 mm FL). Unfortunately few L. amia ranging in size from 500-700 mm FL, or $2-4.5 \mathrm{~kg}$, were sampled (Figure 4.2a and 4.2b).


Figure 4.2: Length (a) and weight (b) frequency histograms of Lichia amia sampled along the South African coast between 1978 and $2007(n=231)$.

## Otolith ageing

Of the 216 pairs of otoliths that were obtained and read, $10(4.2 \%)$ were discarded as they were either too transparent or broken and thus discarded. Useful age estimates were therefore obtained from 206 pairs of otoliths. A photomicrograph of whole L. amia otolith is shown in Figure 4.3.

The comparison of the mean of the $\mathrm{R}_{1+2}$ ages with the $\mathrm{R}_{3}$ age estimates, indicates little bias (Figure 4.4). However, the mean of the $\mathrm{R}_{1+2}$ age estimates tended to be slightly lower (under-aged) than the $\mathrm{R}_{3}$ age estimates. This is especially evident for older L. amia ( $\geq 5$ years) with the mean age difference between $\mathrm{R}_{1+2}$ age estimates and $\mathrm{R}_{3}$ age estimates being -1.14 years. Nevertheless, a high correlation between the mean of the $\mathrm{R}_{1+2}$ age estimates and the $\mathrm{R}_{3}$ age estimates still existed (i.e. $r^{2}$ $=0.99$ ). An APE of $6.8 \%$ and a CV of $8.1 \%$ was calculated for the three sets of age estimates (Figure 4.4). The index of precision was calculated at $4.7 \%$. These values were more precise than the values estimated for many other linefish species off the coast of South Africa (Govender, 1994; van der Walt, 1995; Mann et al., 2002a).


Figure 4.3: Photomicrograph of a whole Lichia amia otolith showing six opaque rings (18x magnification) viewed under reflected light with a black background.


Figure 4.4: Age-bias plot for inter-reader comparison. Error bars represent 95\% CI about the mean age assigned by reader 1 during readings 1 and $2\left(\mathrm{R}_{1+2}\right)$ compared to reading $3\left(\mathrm{R}_{3}\right)$. Dashed line illustrating 1:1.

Age estimates ranged from $0+(138-353 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{FL})$ to 10 years ( 1060 mm FL) (Table 4.3). As only a few $L$. amia were sampled in the size range $500-700 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL, a small number of fish were estimated to be 2 and 3 years old (Table 4.3). Furthermore, very few old L. amia were sampled with only one at 9 years ( 1135 mm FL) and one at 10 years ( 1060 mm FL ).

Table 4.3: The observed age-length key for Lichia amia sampled along the South African coast (1978-2007).

| Size Class | Age (years) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| FL (mm) | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 |  | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |  |
| $100-199$ | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $200-299$ | 4 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\mathbf{3}$ |
| $300-399$ | 6 | 25 | 2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\mathbf{3 3}$ |
| $400-499$ |  | 18 | 4 | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\mathbf{2 3}$ |
| $500-599$ |  | 1 | 4 | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\mathbf{6}$ |
| $600-699$ |  |  | 1 | 3 | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\mathbf{5}$ |
| $700-799$ |  |  |  | 6 | 22 | 4 |  |  |  |  |  | $\mathbf{3 2}$ |
| $800-899$ |  |  |  |  | 7 | 26 | 13 | 2 | 2 |  |  | $\mathbf{5 0}$ |
| $900-999$ |  |  |  |  |  | 7 | 14 | 12 | 5 |  |  | $\mathbf{3 8}$ |
| $1000-1099$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 4 | 4 |  | 1 | $\mathbf{9}$ |
| $1100-1199$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 2 | 1 |  | $\mathbf{3}$ |
| Total | $\mathbf{1 3}$ | $\mathbf{4 4}$ | $\mathbf{1 1}$ | $\mathbf{1 1}$ | $\mathbf{3 0}$ | $\mathbf{3 7}$ | $\mathbf{2 7}$ | $\mathbf{1 8}$ | $\mathbf{1 3}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{2 0 6}$ |

## Validation

## Indirect method

Difficulty was experienced when determining if the marginal zone of the otoliths were opaque or hyaline. As the majority of otoliths used in this study were collected ten or more years ago, the marginal zones of the otoliths had deteriorated. Furthermore, the otoliths of older fish showed stacking of the growth zones, which increased the difficulty of determining the marginal zones of these otoliths. However, from the otoliths with distinguishable zones, it was evident that the margins were opaque throughout the majority of the year (except Jan). Additionally, it is evident that the monthly sample size was smaller in the first half of the year (January to June) in comparison to the second half of the year (July to December). This is because the majority ( $53 \%$ ) of the $L$. amia were sampled along the KZN coast (Table 4.1), where they are only present from June to November. While 155 of the 206 otoliths were used in the MZA, the above mentioned factors contributed to this method providing weak evidence to support the assumption that one hyaline and one opaque band are deposited annually.


Figure 4.5: Temporal changes in the marginal zone of Lichia amia sampled along the South African coast. Numbers in parenthesis indicate sample size of fish collected in each month.

## Direct method

The otoliths of the L. amia that was at liberty for 55 days had a fluorescent mark close to its edge, with the start of a hyaline band distal to the OTC mark (Figure 4.6). This fish had not been at liberty for long enough to deposit an opaque band distal to the OTC mark.

Unfortunately, the otoliths from the second L. amia injected with OTC that was at liberty for 485 days were deformed and transparent making it difficult to see any annuli (Figure 4.7). However, an indistinct fluorescent mark was observed approximately one annulus in from the otolith margin which provides some support for the assumption that one hyaline and one opaque band are deposited annually.


Figure 4.6: Whole otolith from Lichia amia injected with OTC viewed under reflected white light (left) and ultra-violet light (right) (16x magnification). Solid arrow indicating opaque band and dashed arrow the OTC mark (days at liberty = 55).


Figure 4.7: Whole otolith from Lichia amia injected with OTC viewed under reflected white light (left) and ultra-violet light (right) (16x magnification). Solid arrows indicating opaque bands and dashed arrow the OTC mark (days at liberty $=485$ ).

## Growth model

The absolute error model was chosen as it resulted in residuals that were more normally distributed when compared to the relative error model. The runs test was satisfied when fitting the special form of the von Bertalanffy growth equation to the observed length-at-age data, and homeoscedasticity was achieved (Figure 4.8). Table 4.4 summarises the parameter estimates obtained when fitting the special von Bertalanffy growth curve to the observed length-at-age data. Relatively low CV and CI values indicate good estimation of the growth parameters. The fit of the special von Bertalanffy growth curve using the obtained parameters is shown in Figure 4.9.

Table 4.4: The von Bertalanffy growth parameters, standard deviation, CV's and $90 \%$ Cl's of Lichia amia as determined from otoliths.

| Parameter | Value | Std dev | CV | Lower 90\% CI | Upper 90\% CI |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\boldsymbol{a}$ | 0.20 | 0.02 | 0.09 | 0.16 | 0.23 |
| $\boldsymbol{b}$ | Fixed (1) | - | - | - | - |
| $\boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{I}}(\mathbf{m m}, \boldsymbol{t}=\mathbf{0}$ years $)$ | 233.50 | 12.33 | 0.05 | 211.21 | 258.82 |
| $\boldsymbol{L}_{2}(\mathbf{m m}, \boldsymbol{t}=\mathbf{1 0}$ years) | 1069.86 | 17.23 | 0.02 | 1038.50 | 1105.35 |
| $\boldsymbol{L}_{\infty}(\mathbf{m m ~ F L})$ | 1206.08 | 49.14 | 0.04 | 1125.27 | 1323.30 |
| $\boldsymbol{K}\left(\right.$ year $\left.^{-1}\right)$ | 0.20 | 0.02 | 0.09 | 0.16 | 0.23 |
| $\boldsymbol{t}_{0}\left(\right.$ years $\left.^{2}\right)$ | -1.09 | 0.12 | 0.10 | -1.35 | -0.90 |



Figure 4.8: Residual plot for expected length (mm FL) obtained using the von Bertalanffy parameters from the Lichia amia length-at-age data. (Regression line follows the zero residual on the $y$-axis).


Figure 4.9: The von Bertalanffy relationship between length and age in Lichia amia sampled along the South African coast.

The average growth of the L. amia population off the South African coast was therefore described as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{t}=1206 m m F L\left(1-e^{-0.20[t+1.10 \text { years }]}\right) \tag{4.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

The growth of $L$. amia (in weight) was described by the equation:

$$
\begin{equation*}
W_{t}=22.1 \mathrm{~kg}\left(1-e^{-0.19[t+1.10 \text { years }]}\right)^{2.9} \tag{4.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

and is shown in Figure 4.10.


Figure 4.10: The von Bertalanffy relationship between weight and age in Lichia amia sampled along the South African coast. Dashed line illustrates $W_{\infty}$.

Both procedures undertaken to estimate growth in terms of length and weight produced biologically realistic $L_{\infty}$ and $W_{\infty}$ values ( 1206 mm FL and 22.1 kg respectively). The calculated $W_{\infty}$ was only slightly larger than the heaviest L. amia sampled at $20.5 \mathrm{~kg}(1060 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL) but was smaller than the South African angling record which stands at 32 kg (van der Elst, 1988). Similarly, $L_{\infty}$ was only slightly larger than the L. amia sampled with the maximum length ( 1135 mm FL ).

## Tag-recapture data

At the end of 2006, 6456 L. amia had been tagged and 457 (7.08\%) recaptured along the South African coast (Chapter 3). However, the length data for only 4429 of these fish could be verified. While the size at tagging ranged from 175 to 1130 mm FL, the majority of fish tagged were below 587 mm FL (i.e. minimum legal size limit) and relatively few older, mature ( 800 mm FL) fish were tagged (Figure 4.11a). Unfortunately, the length data for only 145 recaptured L. amia (31.7\%) could be verified and were used for the estimation of growth. Time at liberty ranged from 1 day to 8.87 years and size at recapture ranged from 260 to 1109 mm FL (Figure 4.11b) with the majority of fish smaller than 800 mm FL (length at $50 \%$ maturity).


Figure 4.11: Length frequency histograms of Lichia amia tagged (a) and recaptured (b) along the South African coast between 1984 and 2006.

The frequency distribution of fish at liberty < 30 days showed the majority of taggers (63\%) had no measurement error, and that there was as much chance of taggers underestimating the length of fish as overestimating the length of fish (Figure 4.12). The mean difference between recapture and release size was $-0.37 \mathrm{~mm}( \pm 1.50 \mathrm{SE})$, suggesting that the bias in fish measurements was small relative to the size of the tagged and recaptured fish.


Length difference (mm)

Figure 4.12: Distribution of differences in length between tagging and recapture for Lichia amia recaptured <30 days after initial release.

Using Gulland and Holt's (1959) method, the von Bertalanffy growth parameter estimates based on the tag-recapture data were $L_{\infty}=1203.6 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{FL}$ and $K=0.250$ year $^{-1}$ (Figure 4.13).


Figure 4.13: Annual growth rates of recaptured Lichia amia using Gulland and Holt's (1959) method.

The von Bertalanffy growth parameter estimates using Fabens' (1965) method for the three different functional forms from Francis (1988b) are illustrated in Table 4.5. The parameter estimates are all very similar with similar negative log-likelihood values, especially the lognormal and power law forms. The best fit to the model, as determined using Akaike's (1973) information criterion, was obtained using the power law, where: $L_{\infty}=1131.54 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL and $K=0.284$ year $^{-1}$.

Table 4.5: Different parameter estimates and AIC values using Fabens' (1965) method for different functional forms suggested by Francis (1988b) with calculated $t_{0}$ values.

| Functional <br>  <br> form | Parameters |  |  |  | $\boldsymbol{- l n} \boldsymbol{l}$ | No. of <br> parameters | AIC value | $\boldsymbol{t}_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}($ years $)$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\boldsymbol{L}_{\infty}$ | $\boldsymbol{K}$ | $\boldsymbol{v}$ | $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ |  |  |  |  |
| Inverse linear | 1205.21 | 0.21 | 0.71 | $\mathrm{~N} / \mathrm{A}$ | 710.13 | 3 | 1426.27 | -0.018 |
| Lognormal | 1 | 126.83 | 0.29 | 0.71 | 0.67 | 684.91 | 4 | 1377.82 |
| Power law | 1 | 131.54 | 0.28 | 1.72 | 0.70 | 684.64 | 4 | 1377.28 |

By solving for $t_{0}$ for each of the different methods and functional forms (Table 4.5), von Bertalanffy growth curves could be plotted for the different parameter estimates obtained using the tagrecapture and length-at-age data (Figure 4.14). The similarities between the growth curves of the different functional forms are evident, with exception of the lognormal curve which has the highest $L_{\infty}$ and lowest $K$ (Table 4.5) resulting in a more gentle slope. The Gulland and Holt (1959) parameter estimates produced a curve similar to the others estimated with the tag-recapture data ( $t_{0}$ $=-0.016$ years $)$, but a larger $L_{\infty}$ resulted in the curve extending past the other curves.


Figure 4.14: Von Bertalanffy growth curves fitted to the tag-recapture and length-at-age data.

Although the estimates of $L_{\infty}$, using Gulland and Holt's (1959) and Fabens' (1965) methods were similar and biologically realistic, the growth curve using Fabens' (1965) and the residual deviation following a power law (Francis, 1988b), were considered more reliable. This was due to the use of the entire available tag-recapture data set for the Fabens' (1965) model, as suggested by Natanson et al. (2006), and because the $L_{\infty}$ estimated was very similar to the largest $L$. amia tagged ( 1130 mm FL). De Bruyn and Murua (2008) also found Fabens' (1965) model with the residual deviation following a power law (Francis, 1988b) to be more reliable. Furthermore, according to Sundberg (1984), estimates of $L_{\infty}$ and $K$ using Fabens' (1965) model are generally more accurate than those formulated by Gulland and Holt (1959). The limited number of samples, size range and time at liberty when undertaking this method, as well as the high variability in annual growth, would have contributed to inaccuracy in the growth predicted (Natanson et al., 2006). Thus, further analysis was based on the estimates using Fabens' (1965) method.

The von Bertalanffy growth parameters estimated using the method described by Attwood and Swart (2000) resulted in a $L_{\infty}=1281 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL and $K=0.225$ year $^{-1}$. A comparison of the annual growth rate $\left(G_{i}\right)$ using the length-at-age and tag-recapture data (Attwood and Swart, 2000), resulted in the all of the estimated growth rates from the tag-recapture data lying above the values predicted by the growth model based on the otolith age estimates (Figure 4.15). The paired $t$-test revealed that
this difference was, significant ( $p<0.05$ ) and the null hypothesis (the estimated annual growth rate determined from the tag-recapture data is no different to the predicted growth rate determined from the length-at-age data) was rejected at the $95 \%$ confidence level $\left(p=5.17 \mathrm{x} 10^{-11}, t(2.01)=8.21\right)$.

Expectedly the estimated growth rates, when using the von Bertalanffy parameters obtained from the three methods (Fabens', tag-recapture data and otoliths) all decrease with size (Figure 4.15). However, the majority of the estimated growth rates from the tag-recapture data and Fabens' (1965) method lie above the corresponding values predicted by the otolith length-at-age data. Under 910 mm FL, there was a significant difference ( $p<0.05$ ) and the null hypothesis, that the growth rate determined using the parameters from length-at-age data and those from Fabens' (1965) method were no different, was rejected at the $95 \%$ confidence level $\left(p=9.19 \times 10^{-18}, t(2.02)=14.32\right)$, but was accepted for fish $\geq 910-1109 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL $(p=0.08, t(2.23)=1.98)$.


Figure 4.15: The predicted growth rate of Lichia amia from tag recoveries, otoliths and from estimates of growth parameters from Fabens’ (1965) model.

## Length frequency analysis

When analysing the length frequency data from the L. amia caught in the Kleinemonde Estuary from April 1993 to June 2002 (Dr P. Cowley, unpublished data) it was not possible to run the entire data set through ELEFAN I. This was because of the low numbers of L. amia sampled and because of the uneven time periods between samples. In 1993 however, a relatively large number of L. amia were caught ( $n=70$ ) ranging in size from 280-570 mm FL (with the majority of fish ranging from $300-400 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL) and sampling occurred at least once a month from April-December 1993. The data for each month were pooled and taken as having occurred at the beginning of each month (AprilDecember) and fitted with growth curves by means of ELEFAN I (Figure 4.16). The growth curves meet the modal classes of most samples. The von Bertalanffy growth parameters obtained were $L_{\infty}$ $=630 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL and the best estimated value of $K$ (from the $K$-scan) was 0.48 year ${ }^{-1}$ with a growth performance index ( $\grave{\varnothing}$ ) of 5.28.

The $K$-scan routine, when re-run with the length frequency data and a fixed $L_{\infty}$ of 1206 mm FL (from the length-at-age data), resulted in a $K$ value of 0.17 year $^{-1}$. This value is very similar to that estimated from the length frequency data of 0.20 year $^{-1}$. The growth performance index was calculated as 5.46, which again was very similar to that calculated from the length frequency data.


Figure 4.16: Length frequency distribution on the Lichia amia caught in the Kleinemonde Estuary during 1993 fitted with growth curves using ELEFAN I ( $L_{\infty}=630 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL and $K=0.48$ year $^{-1}$ ).

### 4.4 Discussion

The dominance of certain length classes in the fish sampled for otoliths in this study (Figure 4.2) was because of the constraints and methods of biological sampling. With limited funding and manpower, L. amia samples were mainly collected along the KZN coast on an opportunistic basis that extended over a period of thirty years (1978-2007). The length and weight ranges of L. amia sampled were thus biased and not fully representative of the L. amia population distributed along the entire South African coast. By collecting the majority of L. amia along the KZN coast, very few fish in the $500-700 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL size range were sampled as these fish are more common in the surf-zone of the eastern and southern Cape and are rarely caught in KZN waters. These smaller fish are also close to the minimum legal size limit of $700 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{TL}(\sim 4 \mathrm{~kg})$ and anglers that had caught fish of this size (or smaller) would generally not have kept these fish for fear of prosecution. The high frequency of small L. amia ( $<500 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{FL}$ ) in the sample (Figure 4.2) resulted from targeted sampling of juveniles in the Goukamma and other Eastern Cape estuaries.

Determining growth of many South African linefish species using otoliths has often proved difficult. Sectioned otoliths have proved more accurate than when reading whole otoliths (Attwood and Swart, 2000; Newman et al., 2000; Brouwer and Griffiths, 2004) and thus looking at transverse sections of otoliths for larger fish could prove helpful (Gillanders et al., 1999) in the future. However, otoliths of L. amia were not sectioned during this study as they are extremely small and delicate, and thus impossible to section with available equipment. The condition of the L. amia otoliths used in this study resulted in reduced precision of age estimates and under-ageing of larger L. amia occurred. Campana (2001) suggested a CV of $5 \%$ should serve as a reference point when aging fish of moderate reading complexity. Although higher than the recommended reference value, the precision of the age estimates obtained in this study were still regarded as satisfactory as they were more precise than those achieved in many other studies on South African linefish (Govender, 1994; van der Walt, 1995; Chale-Matsau et al., 2001; Mann et al., 2002a; James et al., 2003).

The constraints and methods of sampling meant that when undertaking the MZA, data collected over the thirty-year period were combined into a 'synthetic' year (Radebe et al., 2002). During the sampling period (1978-2007), the growth rate of L. amia could have changed and as a result, this study could not account for interannual variability in the growth rate and effects of changing environmental conditions on the growth rate of L. amia. Although more suitable for a growth study,
ethical considerations deemed it undesirable to sample a large number of $L$. amia over a shorter period. The deteriorated otoliths and biased sampling methods resulted in the MZA (an indirect method of validation) providing only weak evidence to support the assumption that one hyaline and one opaque band is deposited annually. In future studies on L. amia, it is recommended that otoliths from more recent samples should be used (e.g. those collected during this study proved easier to age) and if possible samples should be taken on a monthly basis along the entire South African coast (i.e. not region specific).

When aging L. amia off the South African coast, van der Elst et al. (1993) showed this species to be fast growing, reach a maximum age of nine years and a theoretical maximum length of 940 mm FL. More recently, off the southern coast of Angola, Potts et al. (2008) showed L. amia to reach a maximum age of eleven years and described the growth as: $L_{t}=1137 \mathrm{mmFL}\left(1-e^{-0.22[t+1.50 \text { years }]}\right)$. Similarly, the current study showed L. amia to grow relatively fast, reach a slightly larger $L_{\infty}$ (1 206 $\mathrm{mm} F L$ ) and a maximum age of at least ten years. Considering that the maximum record weight of L. amia in South Africa is 32 kg (van der Elst, 1988) and the largest specimen aged was 20.5 kg ( 1 060 mm FL), it is likely that the maximum attainable age off the South African coast is over ten years. The $L_{\infty}, K$ and maximum age obtained in this study were similar to those of other Carangid species of similar size (Table 4.6).

Table 4.6: Von Bertalanffy parameters and other life-history characteristics of other Carangid species of similar size to Lichia amia.

| Species | Max age (years) | $\boldsymbol{L}_{\infty}$ | $\boldsymbol{K}\left(\right.$ year $\left.^{-1}\right)$ | Study |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| Caranx ignobilis | $>10$ | 1838 mm SL | 0.111 | Sudekum et al. (1991) |
| Caranx melampygus | - | 897 mm SL | 0.233 | Sudekum et al. (1991) |
| Seriola lalandi | 9 | 1252 mm FL | 0.189 | Gillanders et al. (1999) |
| Elagatis bipinnulata | - | 930 mm SL | 0.210 | Iwasaki (1995) |

Van der Elst et al. (1993) fitted a logistic growth curve to the length-at-age data for L. amia and thus had different parameter estimates to those found in the current study. The different parameter estimates found by Potts et al. (2008) may be due to a number of factors. Different growth rates for separate populations could be expected because of different mortality rates and genetic variations (Dutka-Gianelli and Murie, 2001). With the likelihood of separate L. amia stocks off the South African and Angolan coasts, different growth rates may result because of such variations. Further
research and genetic analyses will be able to determine whether these are in fact separate stocks. In addition, one cannot rule out other factors, such as differences in prey availability and environmental conditions (e.g. water temperature off the southern Angolan coast in comparison to that off the South African coast) as further contributors to the differences found. The different maximum size of L. amia sampled, under-aging and inconsistency in the position of the first growth ring (resulting in varying $t_{0}$ values) when aging fish in this study could also have contributed to the slight differences in $L_{\infty}$ and $K$ estimates. Finally, it is also likely that differences in growth rates occur between male and female L. amia, as males mature at a smaller size than females (van der Elst et al., 1993). Unfortunately, this could not be tested in the current study because of the small sample size. Thus, with a sex ratio of 1M:1.9F off the Angolan coast (Potts et al., 2008) and 1M:1F off the South African coast (van der Elst et al., 1993), it is possible that the different M:F ratios would have resulted in slightly different growth parameter estimates.

Unlike the otolith based length-at-age data, the length frequencies from the tag-recapture data (Figure 4.11) better represent the L. amia population off the South African coast. What is evident, however, is that juvenile ( $<800 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL) L. amia dominate the number of fish tagged and recaptured (Chapter 3). This is largely because of the high fishing effort in eastern and southern Cape estuaries where large numbers of juvenile L. amia are tagged (B. Mann, ORI, pers. comm.). Realistic values for $L_{\infty}$ and $K$, using Fabens' (1965) method and residual standard deviation following a power law (Francis, 1988b) were achieved when analysing this data. Growth from this and the otolith based length-at-age data are strictly not comparable and can be misleading, but are useful for a comparison of the growth rate of fish in specific size classes (Francis, 1988a). Working on Seriola lalandi, a similar sized Carangid to L. amia, Gillanders et al. (1999) found comparable results when considering the growth between length-at-age and tag-recapture data. As in this study, Gillanders et al. (1999) found tag-recapture data indicated faster growth rates for smaller S. lalandi ( $550-750 \mathrm{~mm}$ SL), but once larger, the length-at-age data indicated faster growth (>750 mm SL).

The differences between the estimated growth using the tag-recapture and length-at-age data may be ascribed to a number of different factors. These include the under-aging of older L. amia, the influence of tags on growth, inter- and intra-annual differences in growth and variations in yearclass strength (Gillanders et al., 1999). The faster growth rate, indicated by the tag-recapture data for L. amia < 910 mm FL, would have resulted from the dominance of juveniles in the tag-recapture data. Smaller fish are expected to grow faster than larger fish, and the lack of older fish in the tag-
recapture data would explain the faster growth rate indicated by the length-at-age data for those $L$. $a m i a \geq 910 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL. Furthermore, the derivation of the von Bertalanffy parameters and the relatively small sample size of tagged and recaptured L. amia with usable lengths could also have contributed to the observed difference in growth rates between the two methods.

Estimating growth from tag-recapture data is not without fault. Bias can be introduced because of measurement errors of tagged and/or recaptured fish. Growth can also be depressed because of the physiological effect of external tags (i.e. growth is depressed because of irritation from the tag itself) and/or growth is depressed because of the effects caused during capture and tagging (Attwood and Swart, 2000). Surprisingly, taggers were found to have very little measurement error when it was calculated using fish at liberty for <30 days (Gillanders et al., 2001). Furthermore, using the method described by Attwood and Swart (2000), the consistently faster growth apparent for most tagged L. amia, it is suggested that external tags did not have the same effect on depressing growth of tagged L. amia, as has been found for a number of other linefish species (Attwood and Swart, 2000; Brouwer and Griffiths, 2004). As a robust fish with a high recapture and tag retention rate (Chapter 3), and with high growth rates estimated from the tag-recapture data by all methods, it is reasonable to assume dart tags do not significantly depress the growth of L. amia and tagging is thus considered a suitable method for studying growth rates of L. amia. This is particularly evident when considering that the majority of L. amia tagged where smaller fish (Figure 4.11a), which one would expect to be more susceptible to the effects of tagging (e.g. Attwood and Swart, 2000).

Juvenile fish (300-400 mm FL) dominated the length frequency data from L. amia sampled in the Kleinemonde Estuary. A low $L_{\infty}$ and an exceptionally high growth rate $(K)$ resulted from the analysis using ELEFAN 1. Due to this, the resultant parameters are more suited to describe the growth of juvenile $L$. amia that fall in the size range of fish sampled in the estuary. Despite this bias, the similar values of growth performance ( $\varnothing$ ) estimated from the length frequency and length-at-age data, as well as the $K$ values estimated using the $K$-scan routines, the different growth parameters are in fact comparable. This confirms the validity and reliability of using length-based analysis of growth to compare against other methods (Pauly, 1979).

The growth rates determined in this study are important in providing an indication of the vulnerability of the L. amia stock off the South African coast. As a fast growing fish, L. amia not only mature, reproduce and die at a relatively young age, but also reach a large size rapidly enabling
the production of more and larger eggs, thus increasing the chances of larval survival. Thus, the rapid growth rate and relatively early attainment of sexual maturity should enable the L. amia stock to withstand higher fishing pressure than slow-growing, late maturing fish. Van der Elst et al. (1993) considered these life history parameters advantageous in maintaining the stock of $L$. amia off the South African coast. The per-recruit stock assessment conducted for L. amia off the South African coast, in the following chapter of this study (Chapter 5), will use the new growth parameter estimates ( $L_{\infty}, K$ and $t_{0}$ ) as determined from the length-at-age data. Furthermore, because the length frequency distribution from the tag-recapture data is more representative of the L. amia catch off the South African coast, the stock assessment will incorporate the lengths of tagged L. amia.

## CHAPTER 5

Per-recruit Assessment

### 5.1 Introduction

Stock assessment is the processes whereby biological and statistical information are collected and analysed in order to determine changes in abundance of fish stocks (FAO, 1998). In South Africa, most stock assessments of linefish species have been undertaken using per-recruit models (Smale and Punt, 1991; Buxton, 1992; Punt, 1993; Punt et al., 1993; Govender, 1995b; van der Walt and Govender, 1996; Griffiths, 1997a; Chale-Matsau et al., 2001; Fennessy, 2000; Mann et al., 2002a) and are recommended in the Linefish Management Protocol (LMP) (Griffiths et al., 1999). Although other models exist, such as surplus production models, these require total catch and effort data, which in most cases do not exist (Punt, 1993). When making management decisions based on per-recruit models (also known as yield-per-recruit models), it is essential to consider the spawner-biomass-per-recruit (SBPR) relationship (Butterworth et al., 1989).

The yield-per-recruit (YPR) of a species is the potential yield of fish over their lifetime, calculated per age class. This model describes a population in terms of the biological processes of growth, mortality and recruitment (Beverton and Holt, 1957). Analyses using this approach are aimed at preventing growth overfishing (when the rate of fishing results in a greater loss in weight from total mortality than gain in weight due to growth) and poor yield (Griffiths et al., 1999). This is undertaken by trading off the increase in mass of individual fish through growth with the decrease in the cohort size through mortality over time (Beverton and Holt, 1957). Generally the management of a fishery is assisted by evaluating the effects of varying input parameters, such as age-at-first-capture and fishing mortality, on the stock under question. A weakness of the per-recruit model is that it is relatively simple and a number of major assumptions are made. The model assumes that the fish stock under question is in equilibrium (at a steady state) (Beverton and Holt, 1957). For this reason, the $Y P R$ from a single cohort over its entire fishable lifespan is assumed equal to that from the whole population over a single year. Furthermore, it assumes that recruitment is constant regardless of stock size, and that recruitment and selection follow a "knife-edge" function (Sparre and Venema, 1998).

Plotting $Y P R$ against fishing mortality ( $F$ ) allows for target levels (or reference points) to be achieved, e.g. $F_{M S Y}$ and $F_{0.1} . F_{M S Y}$ is the level of fishing mortality at which the maximum sustainable yield (MSY) is achieved. If recruitment and mortality are assumed constant, $F_{M S Y}$ is equivalent to the fishing mortality $\left(F_{\max }\right)$ at which the maximum YPR is attained (Beverton and Holt, 1957). A more conservative approach, $F_{0 . I}$ denotes the level of fishing mortality at which the slope of the YPR curve is $1 / 10^{\text {th }}$ of the slope when $F$ is zero (Gulland, 1968). YPR curves in which $F_{M S Y}=\infty$, unrealistically suggest infinite $F$ can be applied to a stock and in these cases $F_{0.1}$ is considered a more realistic management target (Butterworth et al., 1989).

The $Y P R$ approach is limited in that it under-estimates the effects of fishing on the reproductive potential of the stock, and thus the risk of recruitment overfishing under heavy fishing mortality, is not included (Butterworth et al., 1989). The SBPR approach was designed to avoid the occurrence of recruitment overfishing. The $S B P R$ of a species is the expected lifetime contribution of a recruit at each age in its life to the spawning stock biomass. Generally there is a strong likelihood of recruitment being impaired and subsequent stock collapse once the SBPR drops below critical levels of its unfished level $\left(S B P R_{F=0}\right)$. Studies on a range of species have demonstrated that this critical level is reached once the $S B P R$ is reduced to $20-30 \%$ of the unfished level (Goodyear, 1989; Clark, 1991; Mace and Sissenwine, 1993; Punt, 1993; Thompson, 1993; Mace, 1994).

The Linefish Management Protocol (LMP) outlines biological reference points representing the state of a fish population for the management of South Africa's linefish species (Griffiths et al., 1999). Target and threshold reference points have been set at 40 and $25 \%$ of pristine (or unfished) $S B P R$ respectively. The target reference point is aimed at providing high yield with low risk of stock collapse, whereas the threshold reference point is the point below which the risk of stock collapse is unacceptably high (Griffiths et al., 1999). The LMP further classifies linefish stocks into management categories based on biological reference points derived from SBPR models. Stocks are classified as under-exploited when the $S B P R$ is greater than $50 \%$ of unfished levels $\left(S B P R_{F=0}\right)$, optimally-exploited when the $S B P R$ is between $40-50 \% S_{F P} R_{F=0}$, over-exploited when $S B P R$ is between $25-40 \% S B P R_{F=0}$ and collapsed when the $S B P R$ is $<25 \% S B P R_{F=0}$ (Griffiths et al., 1999).

In previous chapters, it has been noted that the limited geographic range of Lichia amia, its popularity as a gamefish with all sectors of the recreational linefishery and the degradation of many estuaries (nursery areas) in the Cape, has aroused concern about the stock status of this species.

Furthermore, other than a preliminary investigation conducted by the ORI in 1992 into the age, growth and stock status of L. amia (van der Elst et al., 1993), relatively little research has been undertaken on the status of $L$. amia off the South African coast. Thus, considering the value of $L$. amia as a recreational species and the need to provide a scientific basis for its future management, the aim of this chapter is to undertake a stock assessment of L. amia. In this chapter, the stock status of $L$. amia is assessed using per-recruit models that make use of results from the preceding chapters. This in turn will allow the modelling of various management options (in line with the LMP) in order to provide the scientific basis needed for the improved management of this species.

### 5.2 Materials and methods

## Mortality

As an exploited linefish species, there are two sources of mortality for the L. amia population off the South African coast namely, fishing $(F)$ and natural $(M)$ mortality. $F$ is a result of harvesting (all forms of angling) and $M$ results from all other natural factors that cause death such as disease, predation, abiotic factors etc. The instantaneous natural mortality rate of $L$. amia was estimated using two methods:

1. The equation provided by Hoenig (1983):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\ln (M)=0.941-0.873 \ln \left(t_{\max }\right) \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $t_{\text {max }}$ is maximum age of 10 years (Chapter 4).
2. Pauly's (1980) empirical equation:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\log M=-0.0066-0.279 \log L_{\infty}+0.6543 \log K+0.463 \log T \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $T$ is the mean environmental (water) temperature $\left({ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right.$ ) and, because $L$. amia migrate between the colder waters of the Cape and warmer waters of KZN, $T$ over the distribution range of L. amia was taken to be $19{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ after Christensen's (1980) study on Southern Africa's sea surface temperature. The von Bertalanffy growth parameters ( $L_{\infty}=1206 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL and $K=0.20$ year $^{-1}$ ) were
estimated from the length-at-age data (Chapter 4). As a requirement of Pauly's (1980) equation, $L_{\infty}$ was converted to TL from FL using the total length-fork length relationship $T L(\mathrm{~mm})=$ 1.204 FL( mm ) - 6.762 (Chapter 4). The resultant $L_{\infty}$ value was then converted from mm to cm . A range of $T$ estimates was used to test the sensitivity of this method to this parameter.

For $F$ to be estimated, the total instantaneous mortality rate $(Z)$ was first estimated by plotting a catch curve for L. amia (Butterworth et al., 1989). The catch curve was plotted by assigning ages to lengths of tagged fish (Götz et al., in press). This was undertaken by using the age-length key (Chapter 4) to transform the length-frequency distribution of the catch into an age-frequency distribution. By plotting the catch curve using the natural $\log$ of the number of L. amia in each age class, $Z$ was determined from the slope of the descending limb using a linear regression (Ricker, 1975). $F$ was then simply calculated by subtraction: $F=Z-M$. Only those $L$. amia tagged during the past few years (between 2000 and 2006) were considered in order to obtain a more recent estimate of $Z$ and $F$. With the large number of juvenile fish tagged in comparison to larger fish (Chapter 3), use of the length data of L. amia tagged between 2000 and 2006 for construction of a catch curve may be biased. However, in the absence of better data on the age-frequency of the $L$. amia catch and with so many fish tagged along the entire South African coast, it was assumed that the lengths of $L$. amia tagged and released were similar to those caught and killed by anglers.

To provide an alternative estimate of $F$ and $Z$, the tag-recapture data from the ORI/WWF-SA Tagging Project was used. This data included all L. amia tagged and recaptured along the South African coast between 1984 and 2006 (Chapter 3). These two estimates of mortality were calculated using the method described by Govender (1995a), who modified the Baranov catch equation and the exponential decay model (Ricker, 1975) as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
N_{t}=N_{0} e^{-Z t} \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $N_{t}$ is the number at time $t, N_{0}$ is the number at time 0 and $Z$ the instantaneous total mortality rate. In order to estimate values from tag-recapture data, the exponential decay model (Eq. 5.3) was modified such that $N_{0}$ is the number of fish tagged at $t=0$, and thus $N_{t}$ is the number of tagged fish alive at time $t$. This change meant Eq. 5.3 estimated the number of tagged fish alive $\left(N_{t}\right)$, and thus at large, at the end of a set time period $t$ (set at 1 year). At the beginning of the following year $(t+1)$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
N_{t+1}=N_{t} e^{-Z} \text { or } N_{t+1}=N_{t} e^{-(F+M)} \tag{5.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Govender (1995a) extended the model to incorporate multiple releases and recaptures (assuming constant mortality) by modifying Equations 5.3 and 5.4. The number of fish tagged at the beginning of the set time interval $t$ is given as $T_{t}$, and thus the number of tagged fish at large (alive) at the beginning of the time interval $t+1$ is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
N_{t+1}=T_{t} e^{-(F+M)} \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Furthermore, at the beginning of time interval $t+1$ (the next year), when additional fish are tagged and released $\left(T_{t+1}\right)$, the number of fish alive would be:

$$
\begin{equation*}
N_{t+1}=N_{t}+T_{t+1} \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Baranov catch equation (Ricker, 1975) determines the number of fish caught in a given year $\left(C_{t}\right)$ by estimating the proportion of the total mortality during that year that is due to fishing, and multiplies this by the total number dying in that year:

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{t}=\frac{F}{Z} N_{t}\left(1-e^{-Z t}\right) \tag{5.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

The expected number of recaptures during the $t+1$ th time interval $\left(R_{t+1}\right)$ is then estimated by combining Equations 5.6 and 5.7 and adding the proportion of tags that are reported $(\beta)$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{t+1}=\beta \frac{F}{Z} N_{t+1}\left(1-e^{-Z}\right) \tag{5.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\beta=0.7$ (Chapter 3). $F$ and $Z$ needed to be estimated from Eq. 5.8, and because the sampling distribution of tag recoveries can be estimated from a Poisson distribution (Hilborn, 1990; Hilborn and Walters, 1992), the probability of the expected number of tag recoveries ( $R_{t}, t=1 \ldots n$ ), given the observed number of tagged recoveries $\left(O_{t}\right)$, is as follows (Haddon, 2001):

$$
\begin{equation*}
P\left(O_{t}\right)=\frac{R_{t}^{O_{t}}}{e^{-R_{t} O_{t}!}} \tag{5.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

$O_{t}$ is the actual observed number of tag recoveries at time interval $t$ (i.e. each year). The log transformation of Eq. 5.9 then denotes the likelihood ( $L$ ) of the number of recoveries being reported:

$$
\begin{equation*}
L\left(O_{t} \mid R_{t}\right)=\frac{R_{t}^{O_{t}}}{e^{-R_{t} O_{t}!}} \tag{5.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Fully expanded, the log-likelihood (Haddon, 2001) is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
L L\left(O_{t} \mid R_{t}\right)=O_{t} \cdot \ln \left(R_{t}\right)-R_{t}-\sum_{i=1}^{O_{t}} \ln (i) \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

The negative sum of the log-likelihood (Eq. 5.11) was calculated in Microsoft Excel and was minimized using the optimisation routine SOLVER to obtain the estimates of $F$ and $Z$. The $95 \%$ confidence limits of the $F$ and $Z$ estimates were then determined using the likelihood profile in Poptools (Hood, 2008). Discrepancies in the expected recaptures from the observed values were examined using "deviance" (McCullagh and Nelder, 1989) (Eq. 3.9, Chapter 3).

## Per-recruit assessment

As recommended by Butterworth et al. (1989), the behaviour of the SBPR was considered in conjunction with $Y P R$ when assessing the stock status of $L$. amia off the South African coast. Without reliable long-term catch records, and information on the spawning stock recruitment relationships, YPR and SBPR models are the most suitable means of evaluating the status of a fish stock (Butterworth et al., 1989; Punt, 1993; Appeldoorn, 1996; Griffiths et al, 1999).

YPR was calculated as described by Punt (1992) after Beverton and Holt (1957):

$$
\begin{equation*}
Y P R=\int_{0}^{\infty} F \cdot N_{t} \cdot W_{t} \cdot S_{t} \cdot d t \tag{5.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $F$ is the instantaneous fishing mortality rate (assumed to be constant for each age class), $N_{t}$ is the number at time $t$ (Eq. 5.3), $W_{t}$ is mean mass of a fish at age $t$ (derived from Eq. 4.17 and the

FL/Wt relationship determined in Chapter 4 - Table 4.2) and $S_{t}$ the selectivity, which was assumed to be knife-edge selectivity:

$$
S_{t}= \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } t<t_{c} \\ 1 & \text { if } t \geq t_{c}\end{cases}
$$

where fish are only vulnerable to fishing after a particular age (Ricker, 1975), i.e. no fish are selected/captured before age-at-first-capture $\left(t_{c}\right)$, and thus $S_{t}=0$, while those fish equal to and above $t_{c}$ are selected $\left(S_{t}=1\right)$.

SBPR was calculated by summing the biomass at each age multiplied by the proportion mature at each age, and biomass taken as the product of the numbers and mean mass of individuals in the age class (Butterworth et al., 1989):

$$
\begin{gather*}
S B P R=\int_{0}^{\infty} F \cdot N_{t} \cdot W_{t} \cdot M a_{t} \cdot d t  \tag{5.13}\\
M a_{t}= \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } t<t_{m} \\
1 & \text { if } t \geq t_{m}\end{cases}
\end{gather*}
$$

where $M a_{t}$ is the knife-edge maturity function with $t_{m}$ the age at $50 \%$ maturity and $B_{t}$ is biomass. By changing the $t_{c}$ value at the current rate of fishing mortality ( $F_{\text {current }}$ ), the combination of age-at-firstcapture and $F$ that maximises yield without reducing the spawning potential of the stock, was determined. The von Bertalanffy growth parameters from the length-at-age data (Eq. 4.17), in Chapter 4, were used as input parameters for the $Y P R$ and $S B P R$ models. Biological reference points expressed in terms of fishing mortality rate were then estimated. These included $F_{0.1}, F_{M S Y}, F_{S B 40}$, and $F_{\text {SB25 }}$, biological reference points as defined by the LMP (Griffiths et al., 1999). By running the models with different $t_{m}$ values, the effect of age at $50 \%$ maturity on the reference points was also determined (Mann et al., 2002a). All above-mentioned analyses were undertaken and estimates obtained using a spreadsheet and Microsoft Excel 2007.

### 5.3 Results

## Mortality

When using Hoenig's (1983) equation, the instantaneous natural mortality rate ( $M$ ) of $L$. amia was estimated at 0.343 year $^{-1}$. Using Pauly's (1980) empirical equation a slightly lower estimate of $M$ was obtained ( 0.332 year $^{-1}$ ). Although the estimates of $M$, using Hoenig's (1983) and Pauly's (1980) equations were similar, Pauly's (1980) estimate was used because this estimate proved insensitive to changes in water temperature and thus is probably a better estimate of $M$ (Mann et al., 2002a). Furthermore, it was the method employed by van der Elst et al. (1993) and Potts et al. (2008) when estimating $M$ for $L$. amia.

A large number ( $n=2063$ ) of L. amia were tagged on the South African coast between 2000 and 2006. The majority of these fish were between 400 and 600 mm FL (Figure 5.1). Using ages 1-8 years, the instantaneous total mortality rate $(Z)$ was estimated from the descending limb of the catch curve to be 0.752 year $^{-1}$ (Figure 5.2). Thus, by subtraction and using $M$ from Pauly's (1980) equation, the instantaneous fishing mortality rate $(F)$ was estimated at 0.421 year $^{-1}$. Although $L$. amia enter the fishery at age two (corresponding to the minimum legal size limit of 587 mm FL), age one was used as it was the top of the catch curve as recommended by Butterworth et al. (1989). While age one fish theoretically have not entered the L. amia fishery, as it is illegal to retain them when caught, many under size $L$. amia are kept by anglers in the Cape (W. Potts, SAIAB, pers. comm.). As recommended in the methods outlined by Pauly (1984), age 8 was selected as the bottom of the descending limb as fish of age 10 and 12 were poorly represented in the sample.


Figure 5.1: Length frequency histogram of Lichia amia tagged along the South African coast between 2000 and 2006.


Figure 5.2: Catch curve for Lichia amia based on the lengths of fish tagged along the South African coast between 2000 and 2006 ( $n=2$ 063). Solid symbols indicate the points used in the calculation of total mortality.

Both $F$ and $Z$, estimated using the tag-recapture data, were estimated with relatively narrow $95 \%$ Confidence Limits (Table 5.1). With well estimated $F$ and $Z$ values the observed and expected (model-derived) recaptures (Eq. 5.8) were very close to the actual observed recaptures, resulting in low deviance values (Appendix III).

Table 5.1: Mortality estimates for Lichia amia from tag-recapture data (1984-2006) with 95\% confidence limits.

| Mortality | Estimate $\left(\right.$ year $^{-1}$ ) | Lower 95\% CL | Upper 95\% CL |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\boldsymbol{F}$ | 0.050 | 0.046 | 0.055 |
| $\boldsymbol{Z}$ | 0.433 | 0.393 | 0.479 |

## Per-recruit assessment

The mortality values derived from the tag-recapture data were largely unrealistic (Chapter 3). The $F$ and $Z$ values obtained were similar to those obtained for a relatively un-fished population of L. amia in southern Angola, i.e. $F=0.03$ and $Z=0.41$ year $^{-1}$ (Potts et al., 2008). The model further excludes important parameters such as fishing effort, tag-shedding and tag-associated mortality which may have compromised the results (Griffiths, 1997a; Gillanders et al., 2001). Without these parameters, the data violates the assumptions required for more quantitative assessment (Sibert, 1984; Gillanders et al., 2001; Shirakihara and Kitada, 2004) (Chapter 3). Furthermore, mortality was estimated with tag-recapture data from the past twenty-three years (1984-2006) and was therefore not applicable to the current situation in the L. amia fishery. For these reasons, the input parameters used in generating the per-recruit models were as follows: $M=0.332$ year $^{-1}$ (Pauly, 1980), $Z=0.752$ year $^{-1}$ (from the catch curve), $F=0.421$ year $^{-1}(F=Z-M), t_{m}=4$ years, $a=$ 0.00001124 and $b=3.015$ ( $a$ and $b$ were obtained from the length-weight relationship determined in Chapter 4 - Table 4.2). The age at first capture $\left(t_{c}\right)$ was varied between 2 to 5 years to illustrate the sensitivity of the model to this parameter.

The YPR indicated that at the current fishing mortality $\left(F_{\text {current }}\right)$, a $t_{c}$ of 3 years resulted in the highest yield, whereas a $t_{c}$ of 5 resulted in the lowest yield (Figure 5.4). The SBPR model revealed that for a $t_{c}$ of two years (= current age at which L. amia are first caught and legally retained) and $F_{\text {current }}=$
0.421 years $^{-1}$, the current $S B P R$ for $L$. amia is at about $14 \%$ of its unfished level or $S B P R_{F=0}$ (Table 5.3). As $L$. amia are relatively fast growing, and mature relatively early, changes in the $t_{c}$ are reflected as large changes in $\operatorname{SBPR}$ (Figure 5.4 and Table 5.3).

At the current $t_{c}$ of two years, $F_{\text {current }}$ is substantially higher than $F_{S B 25}, F_{S B 40}, F_{M S Y}$ and $F_{0.1}$ (Table 5.3). A $t_{c}$ of two years requires the lowest $F$ for $M S Y$ to be reached, whereas at a $t_{c}$ of 5 years, a slightly higher value of $F$ is required ( 0.390 year $^{-1}$ ) before $M S Y$ is reached. $F_{M S Y}$ is very similar to $F_{S B 25}$ for $t_{c}=2$ and 3 years, and only lower than $F_{S B 40}$ for $t_{c}=5$ years. $F_{0.1}$ is lower than $F_{S B 25}$ and $F_{S B 40}$ for all $t_{c}$ values, with the exception of $F_{S B 40}$ for $t_{c}=2$ years (Table 5.3).


Figure 5.4: Yield-per-recruit (a) and spawner-biomass-per-recruit (b) as functions of increasing fishing mortality $(F)$ for Lichia amia along the South African coast, using different values for age-at-first-capture $\left(t_{c}\right)$. Dotted line illustrates $F_{\text {current }}=0.421$ year $^{-1}$.

Table 5.3: Biological reference points calculated for Lichia amia based on a $t_{m}$ of four years at different $t_{c}$ values (years) and $F_{\text {current }}=0.421$ year $^{-1}$.

| Ref. point | $\boldsymbol{t}_{\boldsymbol{c}}=\mathbf{2}$ | $\boldsymbol{t}_{\boldsymbol{c}}=\mathbf{3}$ | $\boldsymbol{t}_{\boldsymbol{c}}=\mathbf{4}$ | $\boldsymbol{t}_{\boldsymbol{c}}=\mathbf{5}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| SBPR $_{\text {current }}(\%)$ | 13.56 | 20.66 | 31.48 | 47.95 |
| $F_{\text {SB25 }}$ | 0.281 | 0.363 | 0.530 | 1.523 |
| $F_{\text {SB } 40}$ | 0.180 | 0.229 | 0.318 | 0.592 |
| $F_{\text {MSY }}$ | 0.278 | 0.322 | 0.359 | 0.390 |
| $F_{0.1}$ | 0.194 | 0.223 | 0.249 | 0.275 |

With the uncertainty around the length at $50 \%$ maturity of L. amia in South African waters (Chapter 3), biological reference points were calculated with three alternative $t_{m}$ values (Table 5.4). $F_{M S Y}$ and $F_{0.1}$ did not change as the age-at-first-capture was fixed at two years for each for each value of $t_{m}$. The $S B P R_{\text {current }}, F_{S B 25}$ and $F_{S B 40}$ decreased corresponding to an increase in age at $50 \%$ maturity.

Table 5.4: Biological reference points calculated for Lichia amia based on a set $t_{c}$ value of two years and with different $t_{m}$ values (years) and $F_{\text {current }}=0.421$ year $^{-1}$.

| Ref. point | $\boldsymbol{t}_{\boldsymbol{m}}=\mathbf{2}$ | $\boldsymbol{t}_{\boldsymbol{m}}=\mathbf{3}$ | $\boldsymbol{t}_{\boldsymbol{m}}=\mathbf{4}$ | $\boldsymbol{t}_{\boldsymbol{m}}=\mathbf{5}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | ---: |
| SBPR $_{\text {current }}(\%)$ | 23.27 | 18.15 | 13.56 | 9.92 |
| $F_{S B 25}$ | 0.394 | 0.330 | 0.281 | 0.244 |
| $F_{S B 40}$ | 0.238 | 0.207 | 0.180 | 0.159 |
| $F_{M S Y}$ | 0.278 | 0.278 | 0.278 | 0.278 |
| $F_{0.1}$ | 0.194 | 0.194 | 0.194 | 0.194 |

### 5.4 Discussion

The greatest weakness of this assessment on the stock status of L. amia in South African waters was the absence of length (and thus age) data on the catch. For this reason length data from the ORI/WWF-SA Tagging Project were used as a substitute for actual catch data with the assumption that the lengths of $L$. amia tagged and released off the South African coast were similar to those
caught and killed by anglers. This may have resulted in the underestimation of the number of larger fish caught, as taggers are likely to tag undersize fish and retain the bag limit ( 2 fish/angler/day) of fish over the minimum size limit. The validity of this assumption is difficult to assess but based on the length frequency of the tagged population (Figure 5.1) it was believed to be a reasonable assumption. The high number of juvenile $L$. amia tagged could have contributed to the high mortality values obtained using the catch curve. However, when only using the lengths of $L$. amia recaptured along the South African coast (i.e. data that would not have the same size bias as the tagged fish) a high $Z$ value was still obtained of 0.614 year $^{-1}$, and at an $F$ value of 0.282 year $^{-1}$ the $S B P R$ was still $<25 \% S B P R_{F=0}$ (at $t_{c}=2$ years and $t_{m}=4$ years). The $S B P R_{\text {current }}$ would thus probably fall within the range of the two estimates (14-25\% i.e. from the released fish and from recaptured fish).

The estimates of natural mortality determined in this study were similar to those obtained in the studies by van der Elst et al. (1993) and Potts et al. (2008). In both studies, $M$ was only slightly higher than this study (Table 5.5). Different $L_{\infty}$ and growth rate $(K)$ values in each study (Chapter 4) would have contributed to this difference, as well as the different water temperatures $(T)$ used in Pauly's (1980) empirical equation. However, even though L. amia in southern Angolan waters mature at a smaller size and are exposed to different environmental conditions (Chapter 4), rates of natural mortality are still comparable with those in South African waters (Potts et al., 2008). Hoggarth et al. (2006) recommend calculating $M$ from lightly fished stocks, which however, is generally not possible. Fortunately, the work done on L. amia by Potts et al. (2008) provides such an opportunity. Nevertheless, the $M$ obtained using Pauly's (1980) method in the current study was still preferred, as there is a possibility that the L. amia off southern Angola represent a different genetic stock. Future research is needed to determine whether this is indeed the case.

Estimates of total and fishing mortality did, however, vary to a far greater degree between the various studies on L. amia (Table 5.5). Potts et al. (2008) also used a catch curve to calculate $Z$ enabling $F$ to be calculated through subtraction. The resulting $Z$ and $F$ values they obtained were much lower than estimated during this study (Table 5.5). This is expected as the L. amia population off the southern Angolan coast is subjected to very little fishing effort (Potts et al., 2008). Van der Elst et al. (1993) utilized tag-recapture data from the South African coast and calculated a higher $F$ value to that calculated in this study using the tag-recapture data (Table 5.5). However, the uncertainty of the estimates for tag-shedding, tag-associated mortality and questionable rates of tag
reporting, in both studies (in this study and van der Elst et al., 1993), reduced the accuracy of the mortality estimates. There is clearly a need for future research to determine annual variability of these parameters, not only for $L$. amia but also for other important exploited linefish species, e.g. Argyrosomus japonicus dusky kob (Griffiths, 1997a). These estimates could then be incorporated into future studies on the biology and stock status of such species with more confidence than is currently possible.

Table 5.5: Mortality estimates for Lichia amia from different studies.

| Site and year of sampling | Mortality estimate ( year $^{-1}$ ) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | M | F | Z |
| South Africa (1984-1991) ${ }^{1}$ | 0.37 | 0.17 | 0.54 |
| Angola (2005-2006) ${ }^{2}$ | 0.38 | 0.03 | 0.41 |
| South Africa (2000-2006) ${ }^{3}$ | 0.33 | 0.42 | 0.75 |
| South Africa (1984-2006) ${ }^{4}$ | 0.38 | 0.05 | 0.43 |
| an der Elst et al. (1993) $3=$ this study |  |  |  |

The assumption that all fish below the legal size limit are released (knife-edge selection), would have been violated as some anglers (other than taggers) do retain fish under the legal limit where there is poor enforcement of fishing regulations. In addition, there is a chance that some of these smaller fish ( $<587 \mathrm{~mm}$ FL) do not survive after being released because of poor handling or deep hooking (Bartholomew and Bohnsack, 2005). Furthermore, the assumption of knife-edge maturity would have been violated because individual fish will mature over a range of lengths. However, the use of age at $50 \%$ maturity reduces this variability and produces representative results (Sparre and Venema, 1998). Although van der Elst et al. (1993) determined length at $50 \%$ maturity as 800 mm FL, more recently Potts et al. (2008) determined $50 \%$ maturity to be 623 mm FL in southern Angola. Revision of the length at $50 \%$ maturity of L. amia in South African waters should be considered in future research, because with a decrease in age at $50 \%$ maturity there was a relatively large increase in the $S B P R_{\text {current }}$ (Table 5.4) and would therefore affect management regulations depending on the classification of the stock based on biological reference points (Griffiths et al., 1999).

The assumptions of constant mortality and recruitment are difficult to evaluate. $Z$ (and therefore $M$ ) changes with each age class being considerably higher for younger fish (Figure 5.2). Assuming a
constant $Z$ for all age classes in a population is an obvious weakness of this type of assessment but, in the absence of better data, is the best estimate that can be made (Punt, 1993; Appeldoorn, 1996). Furthermore, by assuming constant recruitment, natural fluctuations are not accounted for (Gulland and Boerema, 1973). This is particularly problematic when applied to estuarine-dependent species, where both anthropogenic factors and fishing impact on resources (West and Gordon, 1994). Environmental conditions not only play a role in the number of juveniles recruiting into estuaries but also the number of juveniles and sub-adults joining the migrating population (Marais, 1982; Smale and Kok, 1983; Bennett et al., 1985; Whitfield and Kok, 1992).

Previously, van der Elst et al. (1993) found the L. amia stock off the South African coast to be under-exploited ( $S B P R$ level was $>50 \% S B P R_{F=0}$ ), with $F_{M S Y}$ and $F_{0 . l}$ far higher than in the current study ( 5.65 and 0.7 year ${ }^{-1}$ respectively). These values of $F_{M S Y}$ and $F_{0.1}$ were unrealistically high, and so too the $F_{\text {SBSO }}$ of 0.66 year $^{-1}$. This would imply $L$. amia could be placed under high levels of fishing effort with little effect on the stock. The low input value of fishing mortality used by van der Elst at al. (1993), estimated using tag-recapture data, would have been the key factor in the results obtained. However, as discussed above and in Chapter 3, it is unlikely the mortality estimate would have been accurate because of the cooperative nature of the tagging project and because of the lack of essential parameter estimates.

A more recent study by Lamberth and Turpie (2003) categorised the L. amia population off the South African coast as optimally exploited (between $40-50 \%$ of the pristine $S B P R$ ). However, the study by Lamberth and Turpie (2003) was primarily based on the results from van der Elst et al. (1993). Although they used additional indicators of abundance (e.g. reduction of CPUE from a historical value), it was not apparent which indicators were applied to the individual species assessed. Furthermore, the study by Lamberth and Turpie (2003) was completed almost ten years after the initial analysis by van der Elst et al. (1993), during which time substantial changes in the fishery could have occurred. Therefore, the results from the study by Lamberth and Turpie (2003) are unlikely to have been fully representative of the actual L. amia stock status.

In contrast to all previous studies, the $S B P R$ model used in this study indicated that the $L$. amia fishery off the South African coast has collapsed, as $S B P R_{\text {current }}$ is $<25 \% S B P R_{F=0}$. This confirms the need for stock rebuilding, as found when applying the indicators outlined in the LMP in Chapter 2, i.e. the reduction of the CPUE and catch composition by more than $75 \%$ of a historical value. In
addition to these indicators, the LMP includes public concern as a further useful stock status indicator. According to the LMP, when more than $75 \%$ of respondents class a fish stock as being over-exploited, a necessary decrease in fishing effort is warranted (Griffiths et al., 1999). A questionnaire (Appendix II), undertaken following the 2001 South African Marine Linefish Management Association (SAMLMA) meeting, was used to gauge anglers' perceptions on the stock status of $L$. amia. The results of the questionnaire showed that the majority ( $48 \%$ ) of the 192 respondents were concerned about the L. amia stock decreasing ( $31 \%$ indicated no change, $19 \%$ an increase and $2 \%$ no response). The respondents belonged to various sectors of the South African linefishery and $54 \%$ indicated that they did not target L. amia. Of the $46 \%$ that targeted L. amia, more than half $(58 \%)$ perceived the stock to have decreased. Further separation of the respondents into provinces, showed that of the respondents that target $L$. amia in KZN, $75 \%$ perceived the $L$. amia stock had decreased. These anglers indicated that they had fished for an average of 22 years with $60 \%$ catching one or more L. amia a year. While it is acknowledged that these results are outdated and based on a small sample size, one can infer that perceptions are unlikely to have changed in light of the decreasing catches monitored since 2001. With $75 \%$ of respondents, that target L. amia in KZN, perceiving the stock to have decreased, this further confirms the need for stock rebuilding. This is of particular importance as even though this was not the perception in the Cape, L. amia are only seasonally abundant in KZN (winter months) and comprise mainly of migrating spawning fish.

The low $\operatorname{SBPR}$ further reveals that the current minimum size of 700 mm TL ( 587 mm FL), which was introduced in 1988, as well as the bag limit of five fish/angler/day (introduced in 1973), have proved inadequate to ensure sustainable use. A further decrease in the daily bag limit was implemented in April 2005 (two fish/angler/day), but because the results of the present study were based on exploitation rates from 2000-2006, the short period since the implementation of this new regulation meant that there was little chance for any effect on catches to have been detected. With the current legal size limit ( 587 mm FL that is equivalent to a $t_{c}$ of 2 years), a large proportion of $L$. amia are caught without having had a chance to spawn. The length frequency histogram (Figure 5.1) shows that fish ranging from 587-800 mm FL make up a large proportion of fish tagged.

Stock management has generally been based on optimising yield while preventing growth overfishing, and hence reference points have previously been based on yield, i.e. $F_{M S Y}$ and $F_{0.1}$ (Griffiths et al., 1999). However, Table 5.3 illustrates the failure of the $F_{M S Y}$ management strategy,
for at a $t_{c}$ of 2 and 3 years, $F_{M S Y}$ is very similar to $F_{S B 25}$. Thus, if $F_{M S Y}$ was used as a biological reference point for $L$. amia with age-at-first-capture equivalent to 2 or 3 years, taking into account instability of stocks due to natural variation, according to Gulland and Boerema (1973) there would be a good chance of stock collapse. The $F_{0 . l}$ approach would be a better target reference point for $L$. amia as it is far closer to $F_{\text {SB40 }}$. However, considering the current status of the L. amia stock (<25\% $S B P R_{F=0}$ ) management considerations should focus on stock rebuilding rather than optimising yield.

A skewed sex-ratio can be used as a stock status indicator, such as in the LMP which suggests that management action is warranted when a sex-ratio is skewed by more than 10:1 (Griffiths et al., 1999). However, this is more applicable to hermaphroditic fish species, which generally exhibit changes in sex with size. Thus, in the same way as a decrease in average fish size in a population may reflect a decrease in abundance of adults (Maunder et al., 2006), a highly skewed sex-ratio may also indicate a decrease in abundance of the larger sex. Potts et al. (2008) found a sex-ratio of $1 \mathrm{M}: 1.9 \mathrm{~F}$ in the lightly fished stocks in southern Angola, and attributed this to males having a higher mortality rate and lower longevity than females, which become more dominant with increasing fish size and possibly out-compete smaller males for available food. Claereboudt et al. (2004) showed that female Scomberomorus commerson (king mackerel) were generally more prone to capture than males when using baited hooks. Claereboudt et al. (2004) attributed this to females requiring more energy to produce eggs. A sex-ratio skewed in favour of female S. commerson found by Govender (1995b) in KZN appears to support this hypothesis (Govender et al., 2006). As the L. amia fishery off the South African coast is primarily a hook and line fishery, there may be differing $F$ values for male and female L. amia. High fishing effort in South African waters is expected to decrease the number of large L. amia in a population and consequently the proportion of female L. amia (Potts et al., 2008). With a sex-ratio of 1M:1F found in the study by van der Elst et al. (1993) (which was conducted over fifteen years ago using samples from as far back as 1978) it is possible that the effects of overfishing were already evident in the L. amia population before 1993.

Future research should thus consider separate per-recruit analyses for male and female L. amia from actual length-frequency data of L. amia caught by anglers along the entire South African coast. Length-frequency data would provide the age-frequency distribution of the catch, which could then be used in constructing a catch curve. With a possibility of different $M$ and $F$ values for males and females, separate per-recruit analyses should be carried out for the different sexes, as the SBPR would differ as a result (Govender et al., 2006). Management options could then be geared
appropriately, e.g. implementing a minimum legal size limit that favours females, which mature at a larger size to males (van der Elst et al., 1993), ensuring larger fish are present in the L. amia population.

Based on the results in this chapter, as well as the results from the rest of this study, improved options for the management of $L$. amia need to be explored. Management options may come at a price with an associated decrease in yield, however, as a recreational trophy fish, van der Elst et al. (1993) recommended that $L$. amia should be managed to attain large size rather than high yield. The following chapter aims at doing just that.

## CHAPTER 6 Conclusion and Management Considerations

The general decline in abundance of many South African linefish species is well documented (van der Elst and Adkin, 1988; van der Elst, 1989; Attwood and Farquhar, 1999; Penney et al., 1999; Fennessy, 2000; Griffiths, 2000; Mann, 2000; Pradervand, 2007). In particular, a number of recreationally important migratory linefish species have been shown, using per-recruit analyses, to be mainly over-exploited (i.e. Argyrosomus thorpei, Fennessy, 1994a; Scomberomorus commerson, Govender, 1995b; Pomatomus saltatrix, Govender, 1997) or collapsed (i.e. Argyrosomus japonicus, Griffiths, 1997a; Argyrosomus inodorus, Griffiths, 1997b; Atractoscion aequidens, Hutton et al., 2001; Polysteganus undulosus, Mann, 2007) (Figure 6.1). Very few similar species are optimally exploited (i.e. Scomberomorus plurilineatus, Chale-Matsau, 1996) or under-exploited (i.e. Sarpa salpa, van der Walt and Govender, 1996) (Figure 6.1). Based on the results of this study, the abundance of the Lichia amia stock has certainly declined.


Figure 6.1: Levels of spawner-biomass-per-recruit (percent $S B P R_{F=0}$ ) for recreationally important migratory linefish species off the South African coast, including that found in this study for Lichia amia. Species arranged in the order in which they appear in the text above.

In the South African linefishery, management regulations have been implemented with the objective of regulating fishing mortality $(F)$ by means of effort and catch controls such that fish stocks are maintained at the target reference point (i.e. $40 \% S B P R_{F=0}$ ). Management regulations include minimum size limits, closed seasons, Marine Protected Areas (MPAs), daily bag limits (DBLs), decommercialization, gear restrictions, a moratorium on capture and effort control of the commercial fishery i.e. limited number of vessels (Griffiths et al., 1999). The Linefish Management Protocol (LMP) classifies linefish stocks into four management categories based on biological reference points (Chapter 5). This allows general action plans to be implemented for fish stocks falling into each category. The action plans for each category are as follows: (i) for under-exploited stocks (>50\% SBPR $R_{F=0}$ ) fishing effort could increase slowly to a level which maintains the stock at the target reference point; (ii) for optimally-exploited stocks (40-50\% $S B P R_{F=0}$ ) management measures should remain unaltered; (iii) for over-exploited stocks ( $25-40 \% S B P R_{F=0}$ ) management regulations should reduce the fishing effort so as to rebuild the stock to the target reference point; (iv) for collapsed stocks ( $<25 \% S B P R_{F=0}$ ) the complete or partial closure of a fishery is necessary to enable stock recovery (Griffiths et al., 1999).

The per-recruit analysis undertaken in this study (Chapter 5) suggests that the L. amia stock has collapsed as the $S B P R_{\text {current }}<25 \% S B P R_{F=0}$. Thus, according to the LMP complete or partial closure of the fishery is necessary. However, the rapid growth rate and relatively early attainment of sexual maturity means that small increases in age-at-first-capture are likely to result in sharp increases in the SBPR (Figure 5.4 and Table 5.3). These are life history parameters that are advantageous in rebuilding the L. amia stock and counteracting the high fishing pressure on L. amia (van der Elst et al., 1993). Furthermore, the fact that the stock assessment was based on fish that were tagged and released (Chapter 5), and not actually killed, further reduces the risk. The recent implementation (April 2005) of a reduced daily bag limit from five to two fish/angler/day may also have the desired effect of reducing catch and contributing to stock rebuilding (the effectiveness of which is discussed below). Nevertheless, any one of the following management scenarios would result in an increase in $S B P R$ of $L$. amia above the $25 \% S B P R_{F=0}$ threshold, and although yield may not be optimised (Chapter 5), they would more importantly contribute to the rebuilding of the $L$. amia stock without closing the fishery:

1. Retain the current size limit ( 587 mm FL ) and reduce the $F$ by $33 \%$ to 0.281 from 0.421 year ${ }^{-1}$, i.e. $F_{\text {current }}(\operatorname{method}$ of reducing $F$ is discussed below),
2. Increase the minimum size limit to $667 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{FL}\left(t_{c}=3\right)$ and reduce $F$ by $14 \%$ to 0.363 year $^{-1}$,
3. Increase the minimum size limit to $763 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{FL}\left(t_{c}=4\right)$,
4. Increase the minimum size limit to $842 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{FL}\left(t_{c}=5\right)$.

To assess which of these possible management scenarios would be the most effective, the percent increase in $S B P R$ was plotted as a function of age in years (Figure 6.2). When plotting the increases in $S B P R$ under the different management scenarios ( 1 to 4 ), scenario 1 and 2 will only increase the $S B P R$ to $25 \% S B P R_{F=0}$ after ten years (Figure 6.2). Scenario 3 would increase the $S B P R$ at a faster rate with $25 \% S B P R_{F=0}$ reached after about six years. What is also evident is that, in addition to reaching $25 \% S B P R_{F=0}$ in just 4 years, scenario 4 is the only scenario in which the target reference point $\left(40 \% S B P R_{F=0}\right)$ would be reached over the life span of $L$. amia. However, setting a minimum size limit at 842 mm FL (scenario 4) would exclude $96 \%$ of the current catch of L. amia and would thus effectively be equivalent to closing the fishery. Scenario 3 would probably be the most suitable, because of the difficulty in enforcing methods that reduce fishing effort (as required for scenarios 1 and 2) and at a $t_{c}=4$, which is close to $50 \%$ maturity, immature fish and many first spawning individuals would be protected. Increasing the minimum size is also in line with managing the species as a "trophy fishery" in that only the largest individuals caught would be kept, as recommended by van der Elst et al. (1993). In addition, the exponential relationship between fish size and fecundity found for Caranx melampygus (Sudekum et al., 1991), a similar size carangid to L. amia, suggests that even relatively small changes in the mean adult size could result in a considerable change in the L. amia population fecundity (Potts et al., 2008). By increasing the minimum size limit to 763 mm FL from 587 mm FL, the mean adult size of the L. amia population should increase thus contributing to an increase in the population fecundity (Murua et al., 2003).

Management of South African Linefish has given little attention to maximum size limits. If implemented correctly, a maximum size limit would ensure larger fish are protected. The protection of larger fish, in heavily exploited populations, is important as large old fish are harvested more rapidly because they are exposed to size-selective fishing mortality (Trippel, 1999). Generally larger fish have a higher reproductive potential as, for example, larger females produce exponentially more eggs and the eggs they produce are larger and more viable than those produced by smaller females, i.e. the BOFFF (Big Old Fat Fecund Female Fish) Hypothesis (Longhurst, 2002; Berkeley et al., 2004; Walsh et al, 2006; MPA News, 2007). Once removed from a population, the population fecundity declines because of the reduced abundance of spawners, especially when there is a reduction in large, highly fecund females (Murua et al., 2003). High
fishing effort in South African waters is expected to decrease the number of large L. amia in a population and consequently the proportion of female L. amia (which become more dominant with increasing fish size as males have a higher mortality rate and lower longevity than females) (Potts et al., 2008). A maximum size limit would thus be appropriate for the South African L. amia fishery and assist in stock rebuilding. By running the per-recruit models in Chapter 5 with only those $L$. amia between the ages of 3 and 5 selected, the effect of a maximum size limit in conjunction with a minimum size limit, on the current level of $S B P R$ was simulated (i.e. a slot limit). At the current fishing mortality ( 0.421 year $^{-1}$ ) and at a $t_{m}$ of four years (age at $50 \%$ maturity), a minimum $t_{c}$ of three years ( 667 mm FL) and a "maximum $t_{c}$ " of five years ( 842 mm FL ), the $S B P R_{F=0}$ would be increased to $31 \%$. This result was similar to that observed when running the per-recruit models with the same input values and a $t_{c}$ of four years, but resulted in the lowest yield out of the different $t_{c}$ values used when running the models (Chapter 5). Importantly, an assessment of the reproductive strategy and fecundity of $L$. amia is needed to adequately select a maximum size limit that ensures that the fecundity of the population is increased. However, without acceptance by the fishing public and adequate enforcement, the benefits of a maximum size limit would not be achieved.

Although the first three scenarios do not reach the target reference point, the long-term management goal would be to maintain the $L$. amia stock at $40 \% S B P R_{F=0}$ after initial stock rebuilding. Mace and Sissenwine (1993) stressed the large risk associated with low levels of SBPR and Punt (1993) showed that even when managed at $F_{S B 35}$ spawner biomass could still drop to $<20 \% S B P R_{F=0}$. For this reason, it is essential for the $L$. amia stock to be reassessed at least five years (half the maximum age of this species) after the implementation of any new management regulations to assess their effectiveness.


Figure 6.2: Rate of increase (\%) in relative $S B P R$ after the implementation of management scenarios 1 to 4 . (The assumption of knife-edge maturity means the $S B P R$ increases after age three).

If scenario 3 is not deemed acceptable and scenario 1 or 2 is preferred, the required reduction in $F$ can be achieved through daily bag limits. The effectiveness of daily bag limits in reducing the fishing mortality of $L$. amia was assessed through analysis of daily catches of anglers targeting gamefish (L. amia and other carangids) in KZN and those actively targeting L. amia in the Transkei. For this purpose, raw data from a roving creel census conducted in KZN (1994-1995) (Brouwer et al., 1997) and one conducted in the former Transkei during 1997 (Mann et al., 2003) were obtained. During this time, the daily bag limit for L. amia was five fish/angler/day. In KZN, out of 89 anglers inspected who were targeting gamefish, only nine L. amia were caught by eight different anglers (one of the anglers had caught two fish). In the Transkei, 16 anglers inspected had actively targeted L. amia with only two fish caught (two anglers caught one fish each). The potential reduction in catch associated with a particular daily bag limit was determined by the fraction of the surveyed catch that the daily bag limit would have prevented (Attwood and Bennett, 1995). The daily bag frequencies for L. amia caught in KZN and in Transkei, and the potential percent decrease in $F$ resulting from the enforcement of various daily bag limits are given in Table 6.1. It is evident that the daily bag limit of five fish/angler/day was ineffective in reducing fishing mortality of $L$. amia in both KZN and Transkei. According to the available data, the reduction of the bag limit to two fish/angler/day implemented in 2005 will also have little effect on reducing fishing mortality in
these regions. If the fishery for $L$. amia was not closed, a bag limit of one fish/angler/day would thus be the most appropriate in reducing the fishing mortality of L. amia, but would not reduce it to the extent that is required for scenarios 1 or 2 . The effectiveness of this method can however not be accurately assessed given the paucity of data. In reality the potential decrease in $F$ may be greater than that calculated and, with the recent decrease in the overall fishing effort in KZN (Mann et al., 2008), and in fishing mortality from 1984-2006 shown in Chapter 3 (Figure 3.11 and 3.13), the current DBL may in fact be sufficient. Furthermore, based on anecdotal information, large catches of L. amia are periodically made at certain locations (e.g. Port St Johns, Kingsburgh, Tongaat River mouth, Tugela River mouth etc) and the reduced bag limit will reduce fishing mortality in these circumstances if it can effectively enforced. An extensive creel survey along the entire South African coast is needed in future research for the effectiveness of a reduced bag limit to be determined.

Table 6.1: Observed bag frequencies (Freq.) and potential percentage decrease in fishing mortality $(\% F)$ as a result of various daily bag limits (DBLs) along the KwaZulu-Natal and Transkei coasts.

| DBL | KZN |  | Transkei |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Freq. | \%F | Freq. | $\boldsymbol{\%} \boldsymbol{F}$ |
| 0 | 81 | 100 | 14 | 100 |
| 1 | 7 | 11 | 2 | 0 |
| 2 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 3 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 4 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 5 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| No. L. amia | $\mathbf{9}$ |  | $\mathbf{2}$ |  |
| No. anglers | $\mathbf{8 9}$ |  | $\mathbf{1 6}$ |  |

Inadequate enforcement of management regulations and illegal fishing are a major concern in South Africa's linefishery (Cockcroft et al., 1999; Griffiths et al., 1999; Mann et al., 2002b). In addition, because past management regulations have largely proved inadequate (this study, Attwood and Bennett, 1995; Griffiths, 1997), a broader approach to management is required to ensure the sustainable catch of L. amia. An ecosystem approach would ensure a holistic approach to management (Hoggarth et al., 2006) and would complement the management options already mentioned. This type of approach to management considers all significant interactions between
species and the wider environment (FAO, 2003; Hoggarth et al., 2006). Such an approach is particularly applicable to juvenile L. amia < 500 mm FL. L. amia this size and smaller exhibit resident behaviour in Cape estuaries and good management practices in these ecosystems will increase the rate of juvenile survival. However, estuaries are under threat from increased development in catchment areas, reduced freshwater inflow and increased use of estuarine resources (Lamberth and Turpie, 2003). This has resulted in the reduction and degradation of habitat availability for juvenile L. amia and has thus affected the survival of fish in estuaries (Whitfield, 1997). Furthermore, juvenile L. amia confined to estuaries are highly accessible to anglers and are exposed to high levels of fishing effort. Although most of these are under the legal size limit (587 mm FL), they are targeted by anglers mainly with the intention of catch and release (Chapter 3). However, recent work on mortality rates of released fish suggests that relatively high proportions of released fish do not survive (Bartholomew and Bohnsack, 2005). The maintenance, conservation and even rehabilitation of estuarine environments and catchment areas in the Cape that serve as primary nursery areas during the early life-history stages are therefore integral to the wise management of $L$. amia. The management of estuarine ecosystems will not only benefit $L$. amia, but other important estuarine dependent linefish species (e.g. Argyrosomus japonicas and Lithognathus lithognathus). The C.A.P.E. estuaries programme has been established with similar objectives in mind (i.e. improving estuary management and developing management plans for estuaries) (C.A.P.E., 2008). The establishment of estuarine protected areas (EPAs) may thus prove an effective management tool for these species. For such EPAs to be effective, further research would be required to determine the most suitable estuaries in addition to taking into account the farreaching social impacts of restricting access to these areas. The recent incorporation of the Goukou estuary into the Still Bay MPA and the proposed incorporation of the Sundays River estuary into the Greater Addo Elephant Park MPA are positive developments in this regard.

As discussed above, an EPA would be applicable to resident juvenile L. amia in estuaries, but a MPA would probably be less effective at providing protection for the migrating portion of the $L$. amia stock unless greater knowledge could be obtained on the exact location of the spawning grounds off the KZN coast. If it could be shown that adult L. amia aggregate to spawn in defined geographical areas then establishment of no-take MPAs in these regions could benefit protection of the adult stock (as described for reef fish spawning aggregations by Colin et al., 2003). A closed season on the other hand would potentially offer greater protection for migrating L. amia, especially because closed seasons are better suited to regions with poor enforcement (Wilson et al., 1994;

Caddy, 1999). L. amia are abundant in KZN from April-November and when in KZN waters adults experience much higher levels of fishing effort than when in Cape waters (Chapter 3). During July/August, peak holiday season and the abundance of Pomatomus saltatrix (elf/shad) results in far higher angling effort (Chapter 2) and it would probably be unacceptable to many to close fishing for L. amia during this time. However, October and November would be more appropriate as these months fall out of the peak holiday season and it is during this period that CPUE of L. amia is highest along the KZN coast (Chapter 2). In addition, this period coincides with peak spawning of L. amia (van der Elst et al., 1993). October-November also coincides with the closed season for $P$. saltatrix, an important prey species of $L$. amia. Using $P$. saltatrix as live bait is a very successful and widely used method for capturing L. amia along the KZN coast. A closed season for L. amia coinciding with that of $P$. saltatrix would help reduce the illegal capture of $P$. saltatrix as live bait for L. amia. This would not only contribute to the effectiveness of the closed season in rebuilding the $P$. saltatrix stock, which is the most heavily exploited linefish species along the KZN coast making up $>60 \%$ of the total catch (Pradervand, 2007), but would also assist in reducing the effort directed at $L$. amia and in doing so contribute to the rebuilding of the $L$. amia stock.

Potts et al. (2008) developed an ecosystems approach to management of L. amia in southern Angola in the form of a Traffic Light Precautionary Management Framework (TLPMF) based on baseline biological and ecological information. In order to be effective, this framework must incorporate multiple indicators, i.e. environmental integrity, life-history strategies, stock production and fishery characteristics (Caddy, 2002). The critical quantitative baseline indicators determined by Potts et al. (2008), from the relatively unfished L. amia fishery in southern Angola, allowed a Traffic Light System (TLS) to be used with three colours to quantify concern for the state of an indicator, namely: green (healthy), orange (warning) and red (danger). Although constructed for L. amia in southern Angola, if the results from this study were compared to the baseline reference points in the TLS developed by Potts et al. (2008), two red lights would be obtained. Two red lights are assigned because the current CPUE and total mortality determined in this study are $\leq 40 \%$ (Chapter 2) and $\geq 0.65$ year $^{-1}\left(0.752\right.$ year $\left.^{-1}\right)$ of the baseline reference points in Potts' et al. (2008) TLS respectively. Potts et al. (2008) calculated the cut-off value for $Z\left(0.65\right.$ year $\left.^{-1}\right)$ from the total mortality determined by van der Elst et al. (1993) +0.1 (i.e. 0.55 year $^{-1}+0.1$ ). Unfortunately two other indicators proposed by Potts et al. (2008), the mean size of mature fish and the biomass of an important prey species of $L$. amia in South African waters, could not be determined. However, two red lights, no matter what the other two are, fall in the second and third tier of the TLS management framework
(p 118, Potts et al., 2008). The second tier of the management framework indicates the need for closed areas (MPAs) and the third tier recommends fishery closure.

The results of this study emphasise the need for accurate life-history information and the periodic revision of management regulations as well as life-history parameters of South Africa's exploited linefish species. The management recommendations outlined in this study can only be made effective and realised in collaboration with relevant user groups and their success will depend on the degree of user compliance. In addition, without adequate implementation and enforcement, which has been poor in the past along the South African coast (Cockcroft et al., 1999; Griffiths et al., 1999; Mann et al., 2002b) the management options discussed, will be ineffective. Inadequate enforcement urgently needs to be improved through education and awareness programs, in addition to an increase in the number of enforcement officers, as recommended by Cockcroft et al. (1999).

## REFERENCES

AIRES-DA-SILVA, A., TAYLOR, I., PUNT, A.E., GALLUCI, V.F., KOHLER, N.E., TURNER, P.A., BRIGGS, R. and HOEY, J.J. 2005. A framework for estimating movement and fishing mortality rates of the blue shark, Prionace glauca, in the North Atlantic Ocean from tagrecapture data. Collective Volume of Scientific Papers ICCAT 58: 1073-1086.

AKAIKE, H. 1973. Information theory and extension of the maximum likelihood principle. In: $2^{\text {nd }}$ International Symposium on Information Theory. Petrov, N.B. and Csaki, F. (eds). Publishing house of the Hungarian Academy of Science, Budapest. Reprinted in 1992, in: Breakthroughs in Statistics. Kotz, S. and Johnson, N. (eds). Springer Verlag, New York, 1: 610-624.

AL-BARWANI, S.M., ARSHAD, A., NURUL AMIN, S.M., JAPAR, S.B., SIRAJ, S.S. and YAP, C.K. 2007. Population dynamics of the green mussel Perna viridis from the high spat-fall coastal water of Malacca, Peninsular Malaysia. Fisheries Research 84: 147-152.

APPELDOORN, R.S. 1996. Model and method in reef fishery assessment. In: Reef fisheries. Polunin, N.V.C. and Roberts, C.M. (eds). Chapman and Hall, London: 219-248.

ATTWOOD, C.G. and BENNETT, B.A. 1995. A procedure for setting daily bag limits on the recreational shore-fishery of the South-Western Cape, South Africa. South African Journal of Marine Science 15: 241-251.

ATTWOOD, C.G. and FARQUHAR, M. 1999. Collapse of linefish stocks between Cape Hangklip and Walker Bay, South Africa. South African Journal of Marine Science 21: 414-432.
ATTWOOD, C.G. and SWART, L. 2000. Discrepancy between otolith and tag-recovery estimates of growth for two South African surf-zone teleost species. South African Journal of Marine Science 22: 9-15.

BARTHOLOMEW, A. and BOHNSACK, J.A. 2005. A review of catch-and-release angling mortality with implications for no-take reserves. Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries 15: 129-154.

BEAMISH, R.J. and FOURNIER, D.A. 1981. A method for comparing the precision of a set of age determinations. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 38: 982-983.

BEAMISH, R.J. and McFARLANE, G.A. 1987. Current trends in age determination methodology. In: Age and Growth of Fish. Summerfelt, R.C. and Hall, G.E. (eds). Iowa State University Press, Ames, Iowa: 15-42.

BECKLEY, L.E. 1983. The ichthyofauna associated with Zostera capensis Setchell in the Swartkops estuary, South Africa. South African Journal of Zoology 18: 15-24.

BECKLEY, L.E. 1984. The ichthyofauna of the Sundays estuary, South Africa, with particular reference to the juvenile marine component. Estuaries 7: 248-258.

BECKLEY, L.E. 1993. Linefish larvae and the Agulhas Current. In: Fish, Fishers and Fisheries. Beckley, L.E. and van der Elst, R.P. (eds). Proceedings of the second South African marine linefish symposium, Durban, 23-24 October 1992. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Special Publication 2: 57-63.

BENNETT, B.A. 1989a. A comparison of the fish communities in nearby permanently open, seasonally open and normally closed estuaries in the South-Western Cape, South Africa. South African Journal of Marine Science 8: 43-55.

BENNETT, B.A. 1989b. The fish community of a moderately exposed beach on the Southwestern Cape coast of South Africa and an assessment of this habitat as a nursery for juvenile fish. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 28: 293-305.

BENNETT, B.A. 1989c. The diets of fish in three South-Western Cape estuarine systems. South African Journal of Zoology 24: 163-177.

BENNETT, B.A. 1991. Long-term trends in the catches by shore anglers in False Bay. Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa 47: 683-690.

BENNETT, B.A., HAMMAN, K.C.D., BRANCH, G.M. and THORNE, S.C. 1985. Changes in the fish fauna of the Bot River estuary in relation to opening and closure of the estuary mouth. Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa 45: 449-464.
BENNETT, B.A., ATTWOOD, C.G. and MANTEL, J.D. 1994. Teleost catches by three shoreangling clubs in the South-Western Cape, with an assessment of the effect of restrictions applied in 1985. South African Journal of Marine Science 14: 11-18.
BERKELEY, S.A., CHAPMAN, C. and SOGARD, S.M. 2004. Maternal age as a determinant of larval growth and survival in a marine fish, Sebastes melanops. Ecology 85: 1258-1264.

BERMEJO, S. 2007. Fish age classification based on length, weight, sex and otoliths morphological features. Fisheries Research 84: 270-274.

BERMEJO, S., MONEGAL, B. and CABESTANY, J. 2007. Fish age categorization from otolith images using multi-class support vector machines. Fisheries Research 84: 247-253.

BEVERTON, R.J.H. and HOLT, S.J. 1957. On the dynamics of exploited fish populations. Fishery Investigations Ministry of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food. Great Britain 19(2): 533 p.

BIDEN, C.L. 1948. Sea-Angling Fishes of the Cape: a natural history of some of the principal fishes caught by sea anglers and professional fisherman in Cape waters (2 ${ }^{\text {nd }}$ Edition). Juta and Co., LTD. Cape Town.

BLABER, S.J.M. 1974. The population structure and growth of juvenile Rhabdosargus holubi (Steindachner) (Teleostei: Sparidae) in a closed estuary. Journal of Fish Biology 6: 455-460.

BLABER, S.J.M. and CYRUS, D.P. 1983. The biology of Carangidae (Teleostei) in Natal estuaries. Journal of Fish Biology 22: 173-188.

BLACKER, R.W. 1974. Recent advances in otolith studies. In: Sea Fisheries Research. Harden Jones, F.R. (ed). Elek Science, London: 67-90.

BOUBACAR, L., MIKA, D. and MICHEL, G. 1999. Guide et nomenclature nationale commerciale des espèces marines (poissons, crustacés et mollusques) pêchées en Mauritanie. Ministerio de Agricultura, Pesca y Alimentación/Ministère des Pêches et de l'Économie Maritime, Madrid, Spain: 31 p .
BRANCH, G.M., GRFFITHS, C.L., BRANCH, M.L. and BECKLEY, L.E. 2002. Two Oceans: A Guide to the Marine Life of Southern Africa ( $5^{\text {th }}$ Edition). David Philip Publishers, Cape Town.

BROUWER, S.L. 1997. Evaluation of participation in and management of the South African linefishery in the Southeast Cape. Final report to the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism: Marine and Coastal Management, South Africa. Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, Rhodes University. Unpublished Report: 34 p.
BROUWER, S.L., MANN, B.Q., LAMBERTH, S.J., SAUER, W.H.H. and ERASMUS, C. 1997. A survey of the South African shore-angling fishery. South African Journal of Marine Science 18: 165-177.
BROUWER, S.L. and GRIFFITHS, M.H. 2004. Age and growth of Argyrozona argyrozona (Pisces: Sparidae) in a marine protected area: an evaluation of methods based on whole otoliths, sectioned otoliths and mark-recapture. Fisheries Research 67: 1-12.
BULLEN, E. and MANN, B.Q. 2006. ORI/WWF-SA Tagging Project: summary of Garrick (Lichia amia) tagged in South Africa from Kosi Bay to Cape Point (1984-2005). Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Data Report 6: 29 p.

BUTTERWORTH, D.S., PUNT, A.E., BORCHERS, D.L., PUGH, J.B. and HUGHES, G.S. 1989. A manual of mathematical techniques for linefish assessment: incorporating a report of the SANCOR marine Linefish programme's workshop on population dynamics, Cape Town, 4-6 February 1987. Report of the South African National Scientific Programs 160: 89 p.

BUXTON, C.D. 1992. The application of yield-per-recruit models to two South African sparid reef species, with special consideration to sex change. Fisheries Research 15: 1-16.

CADDY, J.F. 1999. Fisheries management in the twenty-first century: will new paradigms apply? Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries 9: 1-43.

CADDY, J.F. 2002. Limit reference points, traffic lights, and holistic approaches to fisheries management with minimal stock assessment input. Fisheries Research 56: 133-137.

CAMPANA, S.E. 1999. Chemistry and composition of fish otoliths: pathways, mechanisms and applications. Marine Ecology Progress Series 188: 263-297.

CAMPANA, S.E. 2001. Accuracy, precision and quality control in age determination, including a review of the use and abuse of age validation methods. Journal of Fish Biology 59: 197-242.

CAMPANA, S.E., ANAND, M.C., and McMILLAN, J.I. 1995. Graphical and statistical methods for determining the consistency of age determination. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 124: 131-138.
C.A.P.E. 2008. Managing biodiversity: estuary management. The C.A.P.E. programme. Available at: http://www.capeactio.org.za/index.php?C=manage\&P=9.

CELLIERS, L., PRADERVAND, P. and MOFFETT, T. 2004. Boat launch sites and the impact on marine resources along the coast of KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa: a GIS application. In: Delivering sustainable coasts: connecting science and policy. Green, D.R. (ed). Littoral 2004: Proceedings of the seventh International Symposium, Aberdeen, Scotland, 20-22 September 2004. Cambridge Publications, Cambridge 1: 371-376.

CHALE-MATSAU, J.R. 1996. Age and growth of the queen mackerel (Scomberomorus plurilineatus) and seventy-four (Polysteganus undulosus) off KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. MSc thesis, University of Natal, Durban.

CHALE-MATSAU, J.R., GOVENDER, A. and BECKLEY, L.E. 2001. Age, growth and retrospective stock assessment of an economically extinct sparid fish, Polysteganus undulosus, from South Africa. Fisheries Research 51: 87-92.

CHANG, W.Y.B. 1982. A statistical method for evaluating the reproducibility of age determination. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 39: 1208-1210.

CHILDS, A-R. 2005. Movement patterns of spotted grunter, Pomadasys commersonnii (Haemulidae), in a highly turbid South African estuary. MSc thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown.

CHRISTENSEN, M.S. 1980. Sea-surface Temperature Charts for Southern Africa, South of $26^{\circ}$ S. South African Journal of Science 76: 541-546.

CLAEREBOUDT, M.R., AL-OUFI, H.S., McILWAIN, J. and GODDARD, J.S. 2004. Relationships between fishing gear, size frequency and reproductive patterns for the kingfish (Scomberomorus commerson Lacepede) fishery in the Gulf of Oman. In: Management of shared fish stocks. Payne, A.I.L., Obrien, C.M. and Rogers, S.I. (eds). Blackwell, Oxford: 5667.

CLARK, W.G. 1991. Groundfish exploitation rates based on life history parameters. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 48: 734-750.

COCKCROFT, A.C., GRIFFITHS, M.H. and TARR, R.J.Q. 1999. Marine recreational fisheries in South Africa: status and challenges. In: Evaluating the benefits of recreational fisheries. Pitcher, T.J. (ed). Papers, discussion and issues: a conference held at the University of British Columbia Fisheries Centre, June 1999. Fisheries Centre Research Reports 7: 64-70.

COETZEE, D.J. 1982. Stomach content analysis of the leervis, Lichia amia (L.), from the Swartvlei system, southern Cape. South African Journal of Zoology 17: 177-181.

COLIN, P.L., SADOVY, Y.J. and DOMEIER, M.L. 2003. Manual for the study and conservation of reef fish spawning aggregations. Society for the Conservation of Reef Fish Aggregations. Special Publication 1: 98 p.
CONNELL, A. 2007. Marine fish eggs and larvae from the east coast of South Africa. Durban, South Africa. Available at: http://www.theselectgroup.co.za/fisheggs/EIA1\ Carangidae.htm.
COWLEY, P.D. and WHITFIELD, A.K. 2002. Biomass and production estimates of a fish community in a small South African estuary. Journal of Fish Biology 61: 74-89.
CYRUS, D.P. and BLABER, S.J.M. 1987. The influence of turbidity on juvenile marine fish in the estuaries. Part 1: Field studies at Lake St. Lucia on the southeastern coast of Africa. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 109: 53-70.

DAY, J.H. 1967. The biology of Knysna Estuary, South Africa. In: Estuaries. Lauff, G.H. (ed). American Association for the Advancement of Science, Washington: 397-407.

DAY, J.H., BLABER, S.J.M. and WALLACE, J.H. 1981. Estuarine fishes. In: Estuarine ecology with particular reference to southern Africa. A.A. Balkema, Cape Town: 197-221.

DE BRUYN, P.A. and MURUA, H. 2008. Two simple alternative growth models for skipjack tuna (Katsuwonus pelamis) in the Indian Ocean, as estimated from tagging data. Basque Country, Spain. Unpublished IOTC Working Paper: 12 p.

DUTKA-GIANELLI, J.A. and MURIE, D. 2001. Age and growth of sheepshead, Archosargus probatocephalus (pisces: Sparidae), from the northwest coast of Florida. Bulletin of Marine Science 68: 69-83.

EWING, G.P., LYLE, J.M., MURPHY, R.J., KALISH, J.M. and ZIEGLER, P.E. 2007. Validation of age and growth in a long-lived temperate reef fish using otolith structure, oxytetracycline and bomb radiocarbon methods. Marine and Freshwater Research 58: 944-955.
FABENS, A.J. 1965. Properties and fitting of the von Bertalanffy growth curve. Growth 29: 265289.

FAO. 1998. Guidelines for the routine collection of capture fishery data. Prepared at the FAO/DANIDA expert consultation. Bangkok, Thailand, 18-30 May 1998. FAO, Rome. Fisheries Technical Paper 382: 113 p.
FAO. 2003. Fisheries Management: 2. The ecosystem approach to fisheries. FAO, Rome. FAO Guidelines for Responsible Fisheries 4: 112 p.
FAY, R.R. and POPPER, A.N. 2000. Evolution of hearing in vertebrates: the inner ears and processing. Hearing Research 149: 1-10.
FENNESSY, S.T. 1994. The impact of commercial prawn trawlers on linefish off the north coast of Natal, South Africa. South African Journal of Marine Science 14: 263-279.
FENNESSY, S.T. 2000. Comparative life histories and stock assessments of rockods (Family Serranidae) from the East coast of South Africa. PhD thesis, University of KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa.
FRANCIS, M.P., MULLIGAN, K.P., DAVIES, N.M. and BEENTJES, M.P. 1999. Age and growth estimates for New Zealand hapuku, Polyprion oxygeneios. Fishery Bulletin 97: 227-242.
FRANCIS, R.I.C.C. 1988a. Are growth parameters estimated from tagging and age-length data comparable? Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 45: 936-942.
FRANCIS, R.I.C.C. 1988b. Maximum likelihood estimation of growth and growth variability from tagging data. New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research 22: 43-51.
FRANCIS, R.I.C.C. 1995. An alternative mark-recapture analogue of Schnute's growth model. Fisheries Research 23: 95-111.

GARRATT, P.A. 1988. Notes on seasonal abundance and spawning of some important offshore linefish in Natal and Transkei waters, southern Africa. South African Journal of Marine Science 7: 1-8.

GAYANILO, F.C.JR., SPARRE, P. and PAULY, D. 2005. FAO-ICLARM stock assessment tools II (FiSAT II). User's guide, revised version. FAO, Rome. FAO Computerized Information Series (Fisheries) 8: 168 p .

GILLANDERS, B.M., FERRELL, D.J. and ANDREW, N.L. 1999. Aging methods for yellowtail kingfish, Seriola lalandi, and results from age- and size-based growth models. Fishery Bulletin 97: 812-827.

GILLANDERS, B.M., FERRELL, D.J. and ANDREW, N.L. 2001. Estimates of movement and life-history parameters of yellowtail kingfish (Seriola lalandi): how useful are data from a cooperative tagging programme? Marine and Freshwater Research 52: 179-92.

GOODYEAR, C.P. 1989. Spawning stock biomass per recruit: the biological basis for a fisheries management tool. Collective Volume of Scientific Papers ICCAT 32: 487-497.
GÖTZ, A., COWLEY, P.D. and WINKER, H. in press. Selected fishery and population parameters of eight important shore-angling species in the Tsitsikamma National Park no-take marine reserve. African Journal of Marine Science.
GOVENDER, A. 1994. Growth of the king mackerel (Scomberomorus commerson) off the coast of Natal, South Africa: from length and age data. Fisheries Research 20: 63-79.

GOVENDER, A. 1995a. Mark-recapture models for determination of mortality, migration and growth in Pomatomus saltatrix (Teleostei). PhD thesis, University of Natal, Durban.
GOVENDER, A. 1995b. Mortality and biological reference points for the king mackerel (Scomberomorus commerson) fishery off Natal, South Africa (based on a per-recruit assessment). Fisheries Research 23: 195-208.

GOVENDER, A. 1997. The simulation effects of newly proposed regulatory measures on the sustainability of the KwaZulu-Natal shad (Pomatomus saltatrix) fishery. ORI Unpublished Report: 12 p .

GOVENDER, A. and BULLEN, E. 1999. Improving the data from an angler-supported tagging programme. In: Proceedings of the third southern African marine linefish symposium, Arniston, 28 April - 1 May 1999. Mann, B. Q. (ed). SANCOR Occasional Report 5: 109-111.

GOVENDER, A., AL-OUFI, H., McILWAIN, J.L. and CLAEREBOUDT, M.C. 2006. A perrecruit assessment of the kingfish (Scomberomorus commerson) resource of Oman with an evaluation of the effectiveness of some management regulations. Fisheries Research 77: 239247.

GRIFFITHS, M. H. 1997a. Management of South African dusky kob Argyrosomus japonicus (Sciaenidae) based on per-recruit models. South African Journal of Marine Science 18: 213228.

GRIFFITHS, M. H. 1997b. The application of per-recruit models to Argyrosomus inodorus, an important South African sciaenid fish. Fisheries Research 30: 103-115.

GRIFFITHS, M.H. 2000. Long-term trends in catch and effort of commercial linefish off South Africa's Cape Province: snapshots of the $20^{\text {th }}$ century. South African Journal of Marine Science 22: 81-110.

GRIFFITHS, M.H., ATTWOOD, C. G. and THOMSON, R. 1999. A new management protocol for the South African linefishery. In: Proceedings of the third southern African marine linefish symposium, Arniston, 28 April-1 May 1999. Mann, B. Q. (ed). SANCOR Occasional Report 5: 145-156.

GULLAND, J.A. 1968. The concept of marginal yield from exploited fish stocks. Journal de Conseil International de l'Exploration de la Mer 32: 256-261.

GULLAND, J.A. and BOEREMA, L.K. 1973. Scientific advice on catch levels. Fishery Bulletin 71: 325-335.

GULLAND, J.A. and HOLT, S.J. 1959. Estimation of growth parameters for data at unequal time intervals. ICES Journal of Marine Science 25: 47-49.

GUTH, S. 2006. Microsoft Excel spreadsheets for statistics students: test for normality. Mt. San Antononio College. Available at: http://www.mtsac.edu/~sguth/excelstat.htm.
HADDON, M. 2001. Modelling and Quantitative Methods in Fisheries. Chapman and Hall/CRC, United States of America.

HANEKOM, N. and BAIRD, D. 1984. Fish community structures in Zostera and non-Zostera regions of the Kromme estuary, St Francis Bay. South African Journal of Zoology 19: 295301.

HARDEN JONES, F.R. 1968. Fish Migration. Edward Arnold (Publishers) Ltd., 41 Maddox Street, London.

HEARN, W.S., LEIGH, G.M. and BEVERTON, R.J.H. 1991. An examination of a tag-shedding assumption, with application to southern bluefin tuna. ICES Journal of Marine Science 48: 41-51.

HECHT, T. and SMALE, M.J. (eds). 1986. Proceedings of a workshop on age determination and growth modelling of South African Marine linefish. Rhodes University, Grahamstown, 10-12 August 1986. J.L.B. Smith Institute Ichthyology Investigational Report 21: 1-40.

HEEMSTRA, P. and HEEMSTRA, E. 2004. Coastal Fishes of Southern Africa. National Inquiry Service Centre (NISC) and the South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (SAIAB), South Africa.

HEYDORN, A.E.F, BANG, N.D., PEARCE, A.F., FLEMMING, B.W., CARTER, R.A., SCLEYER, M.H., BERRY, P. F., HUGHES, G.R., BASS, A.J., WALLACE, J.H., VAN DER ELST, R.P., CRAWFORD, R.J.M. and SHELTON, P.A. 1978. Ecology of the Agulhas Current region: an assessment of the biological responses to environmental parameters in the south-west Indian Ocean. Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa 43: 151-190.

HICKLEY, P. and TOMPKINS, H. 1998. Recreational Fisheries: Social, Economic and Management aspects. Blackwell Science, Oxford.

HILBORN, R. 1990. Determination of fish movement patterns from tag recoveries using maximum likelihood estimators. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 47: 635-643.
HILBORN, R. and WALTERS, C.J. 1992. Quantitative Fisheries Stock Assessment: Choice, Dynamics and Uncertainty. Chapman and Hall, New York.
HOENIG, J.M. 1983. Emperical use of longevity data to estimate mortality rates. Fishery Bulletin 82: 898-903.
HOGGARTH, D.D., ABEYASEKERA, S., ARTHUR, R.I., BEDDINGTON, J.R., BURN, R.W., HALLS, A.S., KIRKWOOD, G. P., McALLISTER, M., MEDLEY, P., MEES, C.C., PARKES, G.B., PILLING, G.M., WAKEFORD, R.C. and WELCOMME, R.L. 2006. Stock assessment for fishery management - A framework guide to the stock assessment tools of the Fisheries Management Science Programme (FMSP). FAO, Rome. FAO Fisheries Technical Paper 487: 261 p.
HOLLAND, K.N., LOWE, C.G. and WETHERBEE, B.M. 1996. Movements and dispersal patterns of blue trevally (Caranx melampygus) in a fisheries conservation zone. Fisheries Research 25: 279-292.

HOOD, G.M. 2008. Poptools - Software for the analysis of ecological models: version 3.0 (build 6). Available at: http//www.cse.csiro.au/poptools.
HUSSEY, N.E., McCARTHY, I.D., DUDLEY, S.F.J. and MANN, B.Q. in press. Movement patterns and growth rates of dusky sharks, Carcharhinus obscurus (Lesueur, 1818); a longterm tag and release study in South Africa waters. Marine and Freshwater Research
HUTTON, T., GRIFFITHS, M.H., SUMAILA, U.R. and PITCHER, T.J. 2001. Cooperative and noncooperative management of shared linefish stocks in South Africa: an assessment of
alternative management strategies for geelbeck (Atractoscion aequidens). Fisheries Research 51: 53-68.

ILES, T.D. 1974. The tactics and strategy of growth in fishes. In: Sea Fisheries Research. Harden Jones, F.R. (ed). Elek Science, London: 331-345.

IWASAKI, Y. 1995. Age and growth of rainbow-runner. Journal of the Faculty of Marine Science and Technology, Tokai University 39: 101-109.

JAMES, N.C., MANN, B.Q., BECKLEY, L.E. and GOVENDER, A. 2003. Age and growth of the estuarine-dependent sparid Acanthopagrus berda in northern KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. African Zoology 38: 265-271.

JAMES, N.C., COWLEY, P.D. and WHITFIELD, A.K. 2007. Abundance, recruitment and residency of two sparid fishes in an intermittently open estuary in South Africa. African Journal of Marine Science 29: 527-538.
JOUBERT, C.S.W. 1981. Aspects of the biology of five species of inshore reef fishes on the Natal coast, South Africa. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Investigational Report 51: 16 p.
KING, M. 1995. Fisheries Biology, Assessment and Management. Fishing News Books, Blackwell Science, Oxford, England.
KOHLER, N.E. and TURNER, P.A. 2001. Shark tagging: a review of conventional methods and studies. Environmental Biology of Fishes 60: 191-224.
LAMBERTH, S.J., SAUER, W.H.H., MANN, B.Q., BROUWER, S.L., CLARK, B.M. and ERASMUS, C. 1997. The status of the South African beach-seine and gill-net fisheries. South African journal of Marine Science 18: 195-202.
LAMBERTH, S.J. and TURPIE, J.K. 2003. The role of estuaries in South African fisheries: economic importance and management implications. African Journal of Marine Science 25: 131-157.

LANG, J.B. and BUXTON, C.B. 1993. Validation of age estimates in sparid fish using fluorochrome marking. South African Journal of Marine Science 13: 195-203.

LASIAK, T.A. 1981. Nursery grounds of juvenile teleosts: evidence from the surf zone of King's Beach, Port Elizabeth. South African Journal of Science 77: 388-390.

LASIAK, T.A. 1982. Structural and functional aspects of the surf-zone fish community in the Eastern Cape. PhD thesis, University of Port Elizabeth, South Africa.

LIEBOLD, M. and VAN ZYL, C.J. 2008. The economic impact of sport and recreational angling in the Republic of South Africa, 2007. Report of project to scientifically determine the overall

Economic Impact and Strategic Value of Sport \& Recreational Angling in the Republic of South Africa. Development Strategies International PTY LTD, Cape Town, South Africa. Unpublished Report: 49 p.

LONGHURST, A. 2002. Murphy's law revisited: longevity as a factor in recruitment to fish populations. Fisheries Research 56: 125-131.

LUKEY, J.R., BOOTH, A.J and FRONEMAN, P.W. 2006. Fish population size and movement patterns in a small intermittently open South African estuary. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 67: 10-20.

MACE, P.M. 1994. Relationships between common biological reference points used as thresholds and targets of fisheries management strategies. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 51: 110-122.

MACE, P.M. and SISSENWINE, M.P. 1993. How much spawning per recruit is enough? In: Risk evaluation and biological reference points for fisheries management. SMITH, S.J., HUNT, J.J. and RIVARD, D. (eds). Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 120: 101-118.

MANN, B.Q. 1992. Aspects of the biology of two inshore sparid fishes (Diplodus sargus capensis and Diplodus cervinus hottentotus) off the south-east coast of South Africa. MSc thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown.
MANN, B.Q. (ed). 2000. Southern African marine linefish status reports. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Special Publication 7: 257 p.
MANN, B.Q. 2007. Reassessment of the seventy-four Polysteganus undulosus stock after a 10-year moratorium. ORI Unpublished Report 244: 22 p.
MANN, B.Q., SCOTT, G.M., MANN-LANG, J.B., BROUWER, S.L., LAMBERTH, S.J., SAUER, W.H.H. and ERASMUS, C. 1997. An evaluation of participation in and management of the South African spearfishery. South African Journal of Marine Science 18: 179-193.
MANN, B.Q., FENNESSY, S.T., GOVENDER, A. and VAN DER WALT, B.A. 2002a. Age and growth and a preliminary stock assessment of stonebream Neoscorpis lithophilus (Pisces: Scorpididae) along the KwaZulu-Natal coast, South Africa. Marine and Freshwater Research 53: 131-138.

MANN, B.Q., JAMES, N.C. and BECKLEY, L.E. 2002b. An assessment of the recreational fishery in the St Lucia estuarine system, KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. African Journal of Marine Science 24: 263-279.

MANN, B.Q., McDONALD, A.M., SAUER, W.H.H. and HECHT, T. 2003. Evaluation of participation in and management of the Transkei shore linefishery. African Journal of Marine Science 25: 79-97.
MANN, B.Q., NANNI, G. and PRADERVAND, P. 2008. A monthly aerial survey of the KwaZuluNatal marine shore fishery. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Unpublished Report 264: 12 p .

MANN-LANG, J.B. 1996. National marine linefish recreational data - a critical review. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Unpublished Report 136: 11 p.

MANOOCH III, C.S. 1982. Aging reef fishes in the Southeast Fisheries Center. In: The biological bases for reef fishery management. Huntsman, G.R., Nicholson, W.R. and Fox, W.W. JR. (eds). Proceedings of a workshop held October 7-10, 1980 at St Thomas, Virgin Islands of the U.S. - U.S. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Technical Memorandum 80: 24-43.

MARAIS, J.F.K. 1982. The effects of river flooding on the fish populations of two eastern Cape estuaries. South African Journal of Zoology 17: 96-104.
MARAIS, J.F.K. 1984. Feeding ecology of major carnivorous fish from four eastern Cape estuaries. South African Journal of Zoology 19: 210-223.
MARAIS, J.F.K. and BAIRD, D. 1980. Seasonal abundance, distribution and catch per unit effort of fishes in the Swartkops estuary. South African Journal of Zoology 15: 66-71.
MAUNDER, M.N., SibERT, J.R., FONTENEAU, A., HAMPTON, J., KLEIBER, P. and HARLEY, S.J. 2006. Interpreting catch per unit effort data to assess the status of individual stocks and communities. ICES Journal of Marine Science 63: 1373-1385.
McCULLAGH, P. and NELDER, J.A. 1989. Generalised Linear Models (2 ${ }^{\text {nd }}$ Edition). Chapman and Hall, London.
McDERMOTT, S.F., FRITZ, L.W. and HAIST, V. 2005. Estimating movement and abundance of Atka mackerel (Pleurogrammus monopterygius) with tag-release-recapture data. Fisheries Oceanography 14: 113-130.
McFARLANE, G.A., WYDOSKI, R.S. and PRINCE, E.D. 1990. Historical review of the development of external tags and marks. American Fisheries Society Symposium 7: 9-29.
McGRATH, M.D., HORNER, C.C.M., BROUWER, S.L., LAMBERTH, S.J., MANN, B.Q., SAUER, W.H.H. and ERASMUS, C. 1997. An economic valuation of the South African linefishery. South African Journal of Marine Science 18: 203-211.

MELVILLE, R.V. 1979. Opinion 1124 Lichia Cuvier, 1817 (Pisces) conserved. Bulletin of Zoological Nomenclature 35: 233-235.

MPA NEWS. 2007. Big Old Fat Fecund Female Fish: the BOFFFF Hypothesis and what it means for MPAs and fisheries management. Davis, J., Fluharty, D., Christie, P. and Murray, M. (eds). Marine Affairs Research and Education (MARE). School of Marine Affairs, University of Washington. MPA news: International News and Analysis on Marine Protected Areas 9: 1-2.

MULLIGAN, T.J. and LEAMAN, B.M. 1992. Length-at-age analysis: can you get what you see? Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 49: 632-643.

MURAYAMA, E., HERBOMEL, P., KAWAKAMI, A., TAKEDA, H. and NAGASAWA, H. 2005. Otolith matrix proteins OMP-1 and Otolin-1 are necessary for normal otolith growth and their correct anchoring onto the sensory maculae. Mechanisms of development 122: 791803.

MURUA, H., KRAUS, G., SABORIDO-REY, F., WITTHAMES, P.R., THORSEN, A. and JUNQUERA, S. 2003. Procedures to estimate fecundity of marine fish species in relation to their reproductive strategy. Journal of Northwest Atlantic Fishery Science 33: 33-54.
NATANSON, L.J., CASEY, J.G., KOHLER, N.E. and COLKET IV, T. 1999. Growth of the tiger shark, Galeocerdo cuvier, in the western North Atlantic based on tag returns and length frequencies; and a note on the effects of tagging. Fishery Bulletin 97: 944-953.
NATANSON, L.J., KOHLER, N.E., ARDIZZONE, D., CAILLIET, G.M., WINTNER, S.P. and MOLLET, H.F. 2006. Validated age and growth estimates for the shortfin mako, Isurus oxyrinchus, in the North Atlantic Ocean. Environmental Biology of Fishes 77: 367-383.
NEWMAN, S.J., CAPPO, M. and WILLIAMS, D.Mcb. 2000. Age, growth, mortality rates and corresponding yield estimates using otoliths of the tropical red snappers, Lutjanus erythropterus, L. malabaricus and L. sebae, from central Great Barrier Reef. Fisheries Research 48: 1-14.

PAULY, D. 1979. Theory and management of tropical multispecies stocks: a review, with emphasis on the Southeast Asia demersal fisheries. ICLARM Studies and Reviews 1: 35p.

PAULY, D. 1980. On the interrelationships between natural mortality, growth parameters, and mean environmental temperature in 175 fish stocks. ICES Journal of Marine Science 39: 175-192.

PAULY, D. 1984. Fish population dynamics in tropical waters: a manual for use with programmable calculators. ICLARM Studies and Reviews 8: 325 p.

PAULY, D. 1990. Length-converted catch curves and the seasonal growth of fishes. ICLARM Fishbyte 8: 33-38.
PAULY, D. and DAVID, N. 1981. ELEFAN I, a BASIC program for the objective extraction of growth parameters from length-frequency data. Meeresforschung 28: 205-211.
PAULY, D. and MUNRO, J.L. 1984. Once more on the comparison of growth in fish and invertebrates. ICLARM Fishbyte 2: 21 p.
PENNEY, A.J. 1993. The National Marine Linefish System. In: Fish, Fishers and Fisheries. Beckley, L.E. and van der Elst, R.P. (eds). Proceedings of the second South African marine linefish symposium, Durban, 23-24 October 1992. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Special Publication 2: 68-72.
PENNEY, A.J. and VAN DER ELST, R.P. 1988. National Marine Linefish System: a linefish catch and effort database. In: Long-term data series relating to southern Africa's renewable natural resources. MacDonald, I.A.W. and Crawford, R.J.M. (eds). Report of South African National Scientific Programs 157: 476 p.
PENNEY, A.J., MANN-LANG, J.B., VAN DER ELST, R.P. and WILKE, C.G. 1999. Long-term trends in catch and effort in the KwaZulu-Natal nearshore linefisheries. South African Journal of Marine Science 21: 51-76.
POTTS, W.M., SAUER, W.H.H., CHILDS, A-R. and DUARTE, A.D.C. 2008. Using baseline biological and ecological information to design a Traffic Light Precautionary Management Framework for leerfish Lichia amia (Linnaeus 1758) in southern Angola. African Journal of Marine Science 30: 113-121.
PRADERVAND, P. 2007. Long-term trends in selected KZN shore angling species. Report on a project executed on behalf of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism Branch: Marine and Coastal Management Co-Ordination, South Africa. Oceanographic research Institute, Durban. ORI Unpublished Report: 37 p.
PRADERVAND, P. and GOVENDER, A. 1999. Monitoring of the KwaZulu-Natal linefishery the National Marine Linefish System. In: Proceedings of the third southern African marine linefish symposium, Arniston, 28 April - 1 May 1999. Mann, B. Q. (ed). SANCOR Occasional Report 5: 43-46.
PRADERVAND, P. and BAIRD, D. 2002. Assessment of the recreational linefishery in selected Eastern Cape estuaries: trends in catches and effort. African Journal of Marine Science 24: 87-101.

PRADERVAND, P., MANN, B. Q., CELLIERS, L. and KHUMALO, M. 2005. Boat Launch Site Monitoring System: 2004 annual report. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Data Report 7: 62 p.

PRADERVAND, P., KHUMALO, M., KUNENE, P. and MANN, B.Q. 2006. Boat Launch Site Monitoring System: 2005 annual report. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Data Report 1: 75 p.

PRADERVAND, P., MANN, B. Q. and BELLIS, M. 2007a. Long-term trends in the competitive shore fishery along the KwaZulu-Natal coast, South Africa. African Zoology 42: 216-236.

PRADERVAND, P., KHUMALO, M., KUNENE, P., MANN, B. Q. and ELS, M. 2007b. Boat Launch Site Monitoring System: 2006 annual report. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Data Report 2: 59 p .
PRADERVAND, P., MANN, B.Q., KHUMALO, M., KUNENE, P., CELLIERS, L., DUTHIE, T. and BREETZKE, T. 2007c. Co-operative monitoring of boat usage in the KwaZulu-Natal coastal zone: the Boat Launch Site Monitoring System. $5^{\text {TH }}$ Western Indian Ocean Marine Science Association Scientific Symposium, Durban, 22-26 October 2007.
PUNT, A.E. 1992. PC-YIELD II user's guide (version 2.2). Reports of the Benguela Ecology Program, South Africa 26: 36 p.
PUNT, A.E. 1993. The use of spawner-biomass-per-recruit in the management of linefisheries. In: Fish, Fishers and Fisheries. Beckley, L.E. and van der Elst, R.P. (eds). Proceedings of the second South African marine linefish symposium, Durban, 23-24 October 1992. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Special Publication 2: 80-89.
PUNT, A.E., GARRATT, P.A. and GOVENDER, A. 1993. On an approach to applying per-recruit methods to a protogynous hermaphrodite, with an illustration for the slinger Chrysoblephus puniceus (Pisces: Sparidae). South African Journal of Marine Science 13: 109-119.
QUINN, N.W., BREEN, C.M., WHITFIELD, A.K. and HEARNE, J.W. 1999. An index for the management of South African estuaries for juvenile fish recruitment from the marine environment. Fisheries Management and Ecology 6: 421-436.

QUINN II, T.J. and DERISO, R.B. 1999. Quantitative Fish Dynamics. Oxford University Press, New York.

RADEBE, P.V., MANN, B.Q., BECKLEY, L.E. and GOVENDER, A. 2002. Age and growth of Rhabdosargus sarba (Pisces: Sparidae), from KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. Fisheries Research 58: 193-201.
RATTE, T.W. 1982. 'n Opname van die visbevolkings van die Breëriviermond. Bontebok 2: 13-18.

RATTE, T.W. and HANEKOM, N. 1980. Ecological studies of Gilchristella aestuarius and Hepsetia breviceps. In: Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation, Research Report: Estuaries, September 1980. Cape of Good Hope Provincial Administration, Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation Cape Town: 45-50.

RICKER, W.E. 1969. Effects of size-selective mortality and sampling bias on estimates of growth, mortality, production, and yield. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 26: 479541.

RICKER, W.E. 1975. Computation and interpretation of biological statistics of fish populations. Bulletin of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 191: 382 p.

SAUER, W.H.H., PENNEY, A.J., ERASMUS, C., MANN, B.Q., BROUWER, S.L., LAMBERTH, S.J. and STEWART, T.J. 1997. An evaluation of attitudes and responses to monitoring and management measures for the South African boat-based linefishery. South African Journal of Marine Science 18: 147-164.

SCHNUTE, J. 1981. A versatile growth model with statistically stable parameters. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 38: 1128-1140.
SCHOEMAN, S. 1978. Strike! A handbook of angling in South African coastal waters ( ${ }^{\text {rd }}$ Edition). A.A. Balkema, Cape Town.

SCHUMANN, E.H. 1988. Physical oceanography off Natal. In: Coastal ocean studies off Natal, South Africa. Schumann, E.H. (ed). Lecture notes on coastal and estuarine studies. SpringerVerlag, New York 26: 101-130.
SHERIDAN, P.F. and CASTRO MELENDEZ, R.G. 1990. Determining movement patterns in marine organisms: comparison of methods tested on penaeid shrimp. American Fisheries Society Symposium 7: 604-612.

SHIRAKIHARA, K. and KITADA, S. 2004. Estimating migration rates from two tag-release/one recovery experiments. ICES Journal of Marine Science 61: 821-828.
SIBERT, J.R. 1984. A two-fishery tag attrition model for the analysis of mortality, recruitment and fishery interaction. Tuna and Billfish Assessment Programme, South Pacific Commission, Noumea, New Caledonia. Technical Report 13: 27 p.

SINGH, V. 2004. Catch and effort trends in the shore-based linefishery of KwaZulu-Natal. MSc thesis, University of KwaZulu-Natal, Durban.

SMALE, M.J. 1983. Resource partitioning by top predatory teleosts in Eastern Cape coastal waters (South Africa). PhD thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown.

SMALE, M.J. 1984. Inshore small-mesh trawling survey of the Cape south coast. Part 3. The occurrence and feeding of Argyrosomus hololepidotus, Pomatomus saltatrix and Merluccius capensis. South African Journal of Zoology 19: 170-179.

SMALE, M.J. and KOK, H.M. 1983. The occurrence and feeding of Pomatomus saltatrix (elf) and Lichia amia (leervis) juveniles in two Cape south coast estuaries. South African Journal of Zoology 18: 337-342.

SMALE, M.J. and PUNT, A.E. 1991. Age and growth of red steenbras Petrus rupestris (Pisces: Sparidae) on the south east coast of South Africa. South African Journal of Marine Science 10: 131-139.

SMITH, J.L.B. 1949. The sea fishes of South Africa. Central News Agency Limited, Cape Town.
SMITH, M.M. and HEEMSTRA, P.C. (eds). 1986. Smith's Sea Fishes. Macmillan Publishers, Johannesburg, South Africa.
SMITH-VANIZ, W. F. and STAIGER, J.C. 1973. Comparative revision of Scomberoides, Oligoplites, Parona, and Hypacanthus with comments on the phylogenetic position of Campogramma (Pisces: Carangidae). Proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences: fourth series 39: 185-256.
SPARRE, P. and VENEMA, S.C. 1998. Introduction to tropical fish stock assessment. FAO, Rome. FAO Fisheries Technical Paper 306(1): 407 p.
SUDEKUM, A.E., PARRISH, J.D., RADTKE, R.L. and RALSTON, S. 1991. Life history and ecology of large jacks in undisturbed, shallow, oceanic communities. Fishery Bulletin 89: 493-513.

SUNDBERG, P. 1984. A Monte Carlo study of three methods for estimating the parameters in the von Bertalanffy equation. ICES Journal of Marine Science 41: 248-258.
TAGGING NEWS. 2007. Tagging news letter. Mann, B., Bullen, E. and Everett, B. (eds). Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Tagging News 20: 12 p.

TESCH, F.W. 1971. Age and Growth. In: Methods for assessment of fish production in fresh waters (2 ${ }^{\text {nd }}$ Edition). Ricker, W.E. (ed). IBP Handbook, Blackwell Scientific Publications, Oxford, London, 3: 98-130.

THOMPSON, G.G. 1993. A proposal for a threshold stock size and maximum fishing mortality rate. In: Risk evaluation and biological reference points for fisheries management. SMITH, S.J., HUNT, J.J. and RIVARD, B. (eds). Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 120: 303-320.

TRIPPEL, E.A. 1999. Estimation of stock reproductive potential: history and challenges for Canadian Atlantic gadoid stock assessments. Journal of Northwest Atlantic Fishery Science 25: 61-81.

TRUMBLE, R.J., McGREGOR, I.R., ST-PIERRE, G., McCAUGHRAN, D.A. and HOAG, S.H. 1990. Sixty years of tagging Pacific halibut: a case study. American Fisheries Society Symposium 7: 831-840.

VAN DER ELST, R.P. 1976. Game fish of the east coast of southern Africa. I: the biology of the elf, Pomatomus saltatrix (Linnaeus), in the coastal waters of Natal. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Investigational Report 44: 20 p.

VAN DER ELST, R.P. 1988. A guide to the common sea fishes of southern Africa (2 ${ }^{\text {nd }}$ Edition). Struik Publishers, Cape Town.
VAN DER ELST, R.P. 1989. Marine Recreational Angling in South Africa. In: Oceans of Life off southern Africa. Payne, A.I.L and Crawford, R.J.M. (eds). Vlaeberg Publishers, Cape Town: 164-176.

VAN DER ELST, R.P. and ADKIN, F. 1988. National Marine Linefish System: recreational data. In: Long-term data series relating to southern Africa's renewable natural resources. MacDonald, I.A.W. and Crawford, R.J.M. (eds). Report of South African National Scientific Programs 157: 72-75.
VAN DER ELST, R.P. and ADKIN, F. 1991. Marine linefish: priority species and research objectives in southern Africa. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Special Publication 1: 132 p .
VAN DER ELST, R.P. and BULLEN, A. 1993. ORI/Sedgwick's Marine Linefish Tagging Project yields results. In: Fish, Fishers and Fisheries. Beckley, L.E. and van der Elst, R.P. (eds). Proceedings of the second South African marine linefish symposium, Durban, 23-24 October 1992. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Special Publication 2: 64-67.

VAN DER ELST, R.P. and DE FREITAS, A.J. 1988. Long-term trends in Natal marine fisheries. In: Long-term data series relating to southern Africa's renewable natural resources. MacDonald, I.A.W. and Crawford, R.J.M. (eds). Report of South African National Scientific Programs 157: 76-84.

VAN DER ELST, R.P., GOVENDER, A. and CHATER, S.A. 1993. The biology and status of the garrick (Lichia amia). In: Fish, Fishers and Fisheries. Beckley, L.E. and van der Elst, R.P. (eds). Proceedings of the second South African marine linefish symposium, Durban, 23-24 October 1992. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Special Publication 2: 28-31.

VAN DER ELST, R.P. and PENNEY, A. 1994. Strategies for data collection in marine recreational and commercial linefisheries of South Africa. In: Recreational fishing: what's the catch? Hancock, D.A. (ed). Proceedings of the Australian Society for Fish Biology recreational fishing workshop, Canberra, 30-31 August 1994. Australian Society for Fish Biology: 31-41.

VAN DER WALT, B.A. 1995. Biology and stock assessment of the coastal fish Sarpa salpa, (Sparidae) off the KwaZulu-Natal coast, South Africa. MSc thesis, University of Natal, Durban.

VAN DER WALT, B.A. and GOVENDER, A. 1996. Stock assessment of Sarpa salpa (Pisces: Sparidae) off the KwaZulu/Natal coast, South Africa. South African Journal of Marine Science 17: 195-204.
WALLACE, J.H. and VAN DER ELST, R.P. 1975. The estuarine fishes of the east coast of South Africa; IV: Occurrence of juveniles in estuaries; V: Ecology, estuarine dependence and status. Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. ORI Investigational Report 42: 63 p.
WALLACE, J.H., KOK, H.M. and BECKLEY, L.E. 1984. Inshore small-mesh trawling survey of the Cape south coast. Part 2. Occurrence of estuarine-associated fishes. South African Journal of Zoology 19: 165-169.
WALSH, M.R., MUNCH, S.B., CHIBA, S. and O.CONOVER, D. 2006. Maladaptive changes in multiple traits caused by fishing: impediments to population recovery. Ecology Letters 9: 142-148.
WANG, Y. and LIU, Q. 2006. Estimation of natural mortality using statistical analysis of fisheries catch-at-age data. Fisheries Research 78: 342-351.
WEST, R.J. and GORDON, G.N.G. 1994. Commercial and recreational harvest of fish from two Australian coastal rivers. Australian Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research 45: 12591279.

WHITFIELD, A.K. 1984. The effects of prolonged aquatic macrophyte senescence on the biology of the dominant fish species in a southern African coastal lake. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 18: 315-329.
WHITFIELD, A.K. 1990. Life-history styles of fishes in South African estuaries. Environmental Biology of Fishes 28: 295-308.

WHITFIELD, A.K. 1997. Fish conservation in South African estuaries. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 7: 1-11.

WHITFIELD, A.K. and BLABER, S.J.M. 1978. Food and feeding ecology of piscivorous fishes at Lake St Lucia, Zululand. Journal of Fish Biology 13: 675-691.

WHITFIELD, A.K. and KOK, H.M. 1992. Recruitment of juvenile marine fishes into permanently open and seasonally open estuarine systems on the southern coast of South Africa. Ichthyological Bulletin of the J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology 57: 1-39.
WILSON, J.A., ACHESON, J.M., METCALFE, M. and KLEBAN, P. 1994. Chaos, complexity and community management of fisheries. Marine Policy 18: 291-305.

XIAO, Y. 1996. A framework for evaluating experimental designs for estimating rates of fish movement from tag recoveries. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 53: 1272-1280.

ZAR, J.H. 1999. Biostatistical Analysis (4 ${ }^{\text {th }}$ Edition). Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

## APPENDIX I

A: Diet of Lichia amia in Cape estuaries

| Prey | Coetzee, 1982, p 180 |  |  |  | Smale and Kok, 1983, p 340 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\text { Marais, 1984, p } 214$ |  |  |  | Bennett, 1989c, p 402 |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Swartvlei |  |  |  | Knysna |  |  |  |  |  | Swartviei |  |  |  |  |  | Eastern Cape |  |  |  | $\begin{gathered} \text { Bot River } \\ \hline 71-460 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{TL} \\ \% \mathrm{~V} \end{gathered}$ | $\frac{\text { Kleinmond }}{95-495 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{TL}}$ | $\begin{gathered} \frac{\text { Palmiet }}{443-820 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{TL}} \\ \% \mathrm{~V} \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |
|  | $189-734 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{TL}$ |  |  |  | 49-99 mm FL |  |  | 111-515 mm FL |  |  | $40-97 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{FL}$ |  |  | $107-329 \mathrm{~mm} \mathrm{FL}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | \% F | \% C | \% Dom | TL (mm) | \% F | \% N | \% D | \% F | \% N | \% D | \% F | $\% \mathrm{~N}$ | \% D | \% F | \% N | \% D | \% F | \% N | \% M | I.R.I |  |  |  |
| Aquatic macrophytes | 10.0 | 0.9 | 1.0 | 298-618 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Filamentous algae | 1.0 | 0.4 | 1.0 | 298 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Crustacea |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 2.6 | 19.8 | 0.9 | 54.0 |  |  |  |
| Anomura |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 1.1 | 1.3 | 0.3 | 2.0 |  |  |  |
| Macrura |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Caridea |  |  |  |  | 30.3 | 25.3 | 30.9 | 9.4 | 8.7 | 2.8 | 11.8 | 10.5 | 12.5 | 8.3 | 3.4 | 2.7 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Macropetasma africanum |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0.5 | 2.1 | 0.4 | 2.0 |  |  |  |
| Palaemon pacificus | 22.0 | 19.1 | 19.0 | 189-504 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 1.0 | 0 |
| Penaeus spp. | 1.0 | 0.1 | 0 | 398 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Unidentified |  |  |  |  | 6.1 | 4.8 | 1.8 | 9.4 | 6.5 | 1.9 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Mysidacea |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Mesopedopsis slabberi |  |  |  |  | 3.0 | 19.3 | 0.5 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Rhopalophthalmus terranatalis |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 1.1 | 16.4 | 0.2 | 18.0 |  |  |  |
| Mollusea |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Gastropoda | 1.0 | <0.05 | 0 | 452 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Osteichthyes |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 97.9 | 80.2 | 99.1 | 17553.0 |  |  |  |
| Argyrosomus hololepidotus |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0.5 | 0.1 | 1.3 | 1.0 | 5.0 | 8.0 | 0 |
| Clinidae | 3.0 | 2.8 | 3.0 | 329-398 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 59.0 | 0 | 0 |
| Climus spatulatus |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Diplodus sargus |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 3.1 | 1.1 | 6.9 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Engraulidae |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 3.1 | $2.2$ | $8.8$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Etrumeus teres |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $6.3$ | $3.3$ | $3.3$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Gilchristella aestuarius | $27.0$ | $23.6$ | $25.0$ |  |  |  |  | $6.3$ | $3.3$ | $12.6$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Gobiidae | $13,0$ | $9.9$ | $11.0$ | 298-594 | 33.3 | 19.3 | 43.1 | $40.6$ | $30.4$ | $14.3$ | $11.8$ | $10.5$ | $9.2$ | $58.3$ | $34.5$ | $19.1$ | $2.1$ | $1.7$ | $0.6$ | $5.0$ |  |  |  |
| Caffrogobius mullifasciatus |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Hemirhamphus |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 3.1 | 1.1 | 1.7 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 5.0 | 6.0 | 0 |
| Hyporhamphus capensis | 1.0 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Hepsetia breviceps | 13.0 | 4.9 | 5.0 | 205-525 | 3.0 | 2.4 | 1.0 | 28.1 | 16.3 | 8.8 | 17.6 | 21.1 | 58.0 | 33.3 | 44.8 | 63.1 | 1.1 | 2.0 | 0.9 | 3.0 |  |  |  |
| Heterosomata | 1.0 | 0.3 | 0 | 521 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Lichia amia |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 1.1 | 0.4 | 1.8 | 3.0 |  |  |  |
| Lithognathus lithognathus | 1.0 | 0.7 | 1.0 | 326 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Micropterus salmoides |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 21.3 | 21.5 | 23.4 | 956.0 |  |  |  |
| Monodactylus falciformis | 9.0 | 7.4 | 7.0 | 446-734 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 8.3 | 6.9 | 2.7 |  |  |  |  | 0 | 22.0 | 0 |
| Mugilidae |  |  |  |  | 30.3 | 16.9 | 16.1 | 25.0 | 10.9 | 13.2 | 5.9 | 5.3 | 3.2 |  |  |  | 9.0 | 3.1 | 12.3 | 139.0 |  |  |  |
| Liza dumerili |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0.5 | 0.1 | $0.4$ | $0.3$ | 26.0 | 60.0 | 0 |
| Liza richardsomi | 8.0 | 7.9 | 8.0 | 227-594 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 4.8 | 1.3 | $8.0$ | $45,0$ |  |  |  |
| Mugil cephalus |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 4.8 | 1.3 | 10.2 | 55.0 |  |  |  |
| Oreochromis spp. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 1.1 | 0.9 | 1.1 | 2.0 |  |  |  |
| Pomadasys commersonmi |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 1.1 | 0.3 | 2.6 | 3.0 |  |  |  |
| Pomadasys olivaceum |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 2.1 | 2.8 | 4.3 | 15.0 | 5.0 | 0 | 0 |
| Rhabdosargus holubi | 9.0 | 8.2 | 9.0 | 320-621 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 2.7 | 0.9 | 2.4 | 9.0 |  |  |  |
| Sarpa salpa |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $6.3$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Spondyliasoma emarginatum |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $3.1$ | $4.3$ | $12.0$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Unidentified fish | 21.0 | 14.2 | 13.0 | 237-630 | 21.2 | 12.0 | 6.6 | 15.6 | 6.5 | 3.1 | 47.1 | 47.4 | 15.2 | 8.3 | 3.4 | 5.7 | 39.4 | 30.5 | 26.7 | 2254.0 |  |  |  |
| $n$ |  |  | 150 |  |  | 33 |  |  | 32 |  |  | 17 |  |  | 12 |  |  |  | 88 |  | 3 | 12 | 39 |

B: Diet of Lichia amia in KZN estuaries

| Prey | Whitfield and Blaber, 1978, p 677 <br> St Lucia <br> $120-782 \mathrm{~mm}$ TL |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  | Blaber and Cyrus, 1983, p 183 KZN estuaries $95-545 \mathrm{~mm}$ SL |  |  |
|  | \% F | \% N | \% W | \% F | \% E | Prey SL (mm) |
| Crustacea |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Penaeidae |  |  |  | 5.0 |  |  |
| Osteichthyes |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Gilchristella aestuarius | 9.0 | 5.0 | 0.1 | 5.0 | 0.5 | 30 |
| Hilsa kelee |  |  |  | 15.0 | 8.0 | 50-90 |
| Hyporhamphus capensis |  |  |  | 5.0 | 0.3 | 50 |
| Mugilidae | 45.5 | 25.0 | 43.1 |  |  |  |
| Mugil cephalus |  |  |  | 10.0 | 5.0 | 70-120 |
| Valamugil cunnesius |  |  |  | 20.0 | 20.0 | 100-150 |
| Pomadasys commersonni | 9.0 | 5.0 | 12.4 |  |  |  |
| Rhabdosargus holubi | 9.0 | 5.0 | 12.0 |  |  |  |
| Rhabdosargus sarba | 45.5 | 25.0 | 28.1 |  |  |  |
| Sarotherodon mossambicus |  |  |  | 5.0 | 40.0 | 170 |
| Thryssa vitrirostris | 18.1 | 20.0 | 1.3 | 10.0 | 25.0 | 70-160 |
| Unidentified fish | 18.0 | 15.0 |  |  |  |  |
| $n$ | 11 |  |  | 27 |  |  |

C: Diet of Lichia amia in the Eastern Cape surf-zone

| Prey |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 401-700 mm FL |  | FL | 701-1 200 mm FL |  | p 18 | 401-1 200 mm FL |  |  |
|  | \% F | \% N | \% m | \% F | \% N | \% m | \% F | \% N | \% m |
| Crustacea |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Macropetasma africana | 3.6 | 3.3 | 0.1 |  |  |  | 1.3 | 1.8 | $<0.1$ |
| Mollusca |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Sepiidae |  |  |  | 2.1 | 1.0 | 4.7 | 1.3 | 0.5 | 3.6 |
| Osteichthyes |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Argyrosomus hololepidotus | 3.6 | 1.7 | 0.1 | 2.1 | 1 | 3.2 | 2.7 | 1.4 | 2.5 |
| Umbrina canariensis | 3.6 | 0.8 | 0.1 |  |  |  | 1.3 | 0.5 | $<0.1$ |
| Engraulidae |  |  |  | 4.3 | 2 | 0.1 | 2.7 | 0.9 | $<0.1$ |
| Engraulis capensis | 39.3 | 51.2 | 24.3 | 25.5 | 18.2 | 5.2 | 30.7 | 36.4 | 9.8 |
| Etrumeus teres | 7.1 | 2.5 | 5.7 | 8.5 | 5.1 | 2 | 8 | 3.6 | 2.9 |
| Sardinops ocellata | 7.1 | 2.5 | 4.3 | 36.2 | 35.4 | 39.2 | 25.3 | 17.3 | 31 |
| Liza richardsoni | 3.6 | 0.8 | 1 | 4.3 | 2 | 2.6 | 4 | 1.4 | 2.2 |
| Myxus capensis |  |  |  | 2.1 | 1 | 4.1 | 1.3 | 0.5 | 3.1 |
| Pomadasys olivaceum | 10.7 | 3.3 | 0.7 |  |  |  | 4 | 1.8 | 0.2 |
| Pomatomus saltatrix |  |  |  | 2.1 | 2 | 0.8 | 1.3 | 0.9 | 0.6 |
| Scomber japonicus | 10.7 | 3.3 | 11.4 | 10.6 | 8.1 | 17 | 10.7 | 5.5 | 15.7 |
| Sparidae | 3.6 | 0.8 | 0.1 |  |  |  | 1.3 | 0.5 | $<0.1$ |
| Cheimerius nufar | 10.7 | 3.3 | 7.4 |  |  |  | 4 | 1.8 | 1.8 |
| Pagellus natalensis | 14.3 | 5.8 | 10.6 | 17 | 14.1 | 17 | 16 | 9.5 | 15.5 |
| Sphyraenidae | 3.6 | 0.8 | 0 |  |  |  | 1.3 | 0.5 | 0.1 |
| Trachurus trachurus | 17.9 | 14.9 | 32.3 | 4.3 | 7.1 | 3.9 | 9.3 | 11.4 | 10.6 |
| Unidentified fish | 21.4 | 5 | 1.4 | 6.4 | 3 | 0.2 | 12 | 4.1 | 0.5 |
| $n$ |  | 28 |  |  | 47 |  |  | 75 |  |

KEY: $\% \mathbf{F}=$ Percent frequency; $\% \mathbf{N}=$ numerical frequency; $\% \mathbf{E}=$ percent of energy intake; $\% \mathbf{C}=$ composition; $\boldsymbol{\%} \mathbf{V}=$ volume, $\boldsymbol{\%} \mathbf{D o m}=$ dominance; $\boldsymbol{\%} \mathbf{M}=$ percentage of body mass; $\mathbf{\%} \mathbf{m}=$ wet mass; $\boldsymbol{\%} \mathbf{D}=$ dry mass; $\boldsymbol{\%} \mathbf{W}=$ gravimetric analysis (weight); $\mathbf{I R I}=$ Index of Relative Importance; $\boldsymbol{n}=$ number of stomachs analysed

## APPENDIX II

## ANGLER OPINION SURVEY

Following the last SAMLMA meeting on 2 May 2001, representatives of the various recereational linefish sectors were requested to gather comment on the status of garrickleervis from their members. Your time in completing this short questionnaire will be greatly appreciated.

Oceanographic Research Institute (ORI)

- WHICH IS YOUR PRIMARY AREA OF FISHING?

Tick one:

KZN

Transkei

E. Cape

S. Cape

W. Cape

- WHICH IS YOU MAIN TYPE OF FISHING?

Tick one:

Shore

Estuary

Skiboat

Spear

- HOW MANY YEARS HAVE YOU BEEN FISHING? $\square$ Years
- CONCERNING GARRICK/LEERVIS

Do you target this species?
Yes $\square$
No $\square$

How often do you catch garrick?


Based on your own experience, do you think garrick has increased or decreased over the last 10 years?

Increased $\square$ Decreased $\square$ No change $\square$

HOME TOWN $\qquad$ DATE $\qquad$

## APPENDIX III



A: Observed and expected recaptures of Lichia amia tagged along the South African cost (1984-2006)

B: Observed and expected recaptures of tagged Lichia amia along the South African coast (1984-2006) and associated deviance values

| Year | Observed | Expected | Deviance |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 84 | 1 | 0.51 | 0.29 |
| 85 | 8 | 4.63 | 1.68 |
| 86 | 6 | 7.89 | 0.54 |
| 87 | 7 | 9.01 | 0.53 |
| 88 | 6 | 13.18 | 6.38 |
| 89 | 16 | 16.74 | 0.03 |
| 90 | 16 | 19.95 | 0.90 |
| 91 | 27 | 26.39 | 0.01 |
| 92 | 33 | 29.59 | 0.36 |
| 93 | 45 | 36.02 | 1.92 |
| 94 | 42 | 34.53 | 1.42 |
| 95 | 44 | 30.60 | 4.57 |
| 96 | 19 | 24.16 | 1.29 |
| 97 | 29 | 24.20 | 0.84 |
| 98 | 31 | 22.65 | 2.48 |
| 99 | 18 | 18.90 | 0.04 |
| 00 | 17 | 18.25 | 0.09 |
| 01 | 16 | 17.41 | 0.12 |
| 02 | 11 | 15.18 | 1.42 |
| 03 | 8 | 15.02 | 4.88 |
| 04 | 13 | 15.14 | 0.33 |
| 05 | 16 | 21.76 | 1.86 |
| 06 | 28 | 35.30 | 1.75 |


[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ LWC $=$ rest of Western Cape up until Cape Point (5 653)

